



AB

# *RX-V1900*

---

*AV Receiver*

OWNER'S MANUAL

## Caution: Read this before operating your unit.

- 1 To assure the finest performance, please read this manual carefully. Keep it in a safe place for future reference.
- 2 Install this sound system in a well ventilated, cool, dry, clean place – away from direct sunlight, heat sources, vibration, dust, moisture, and/or cold. Allow ventilation space of at least 30 cm on the top, 20 cm on the left and right, and 20 cm on the back of this unit.
- 3 Locate this unit away from other electrical appliances, motors, or transformers to avoid humming sounds.
- 4 Do not expose this unit to sudden temperature changes from cold to hot, and do not locate this unit in an environment with high humidity (i.e. a room with a humidifier) to prevent condensation inside this unit, which may cause an electrical shock, fire, damage to this unit, and/or personal injury.
- 5 Avoid installing this unit where foreign objects may fall onto this unit and/or this unit may be exposed to liquid dripping or splashing. On the top of this unit, do not place:
  - Other components, as they may cause damage and/or discoloration on the surface of this unit.
  - Burning objects (i.e. candles), as they may cause fire, damage to this unit, and/or personal injury.
  - Containers with liquid in them, as they may fall and liquid may cause electrical shock to the user and/or damage to this unit.
- 6 Do not cover this unit with a newspaper, tablecloth, curtain, etc. in order not to obstruct heat radiation. If the temperature inside this unit rises, it may cause fire, damage to this unit, and/or personal injury.
- 7 Do not plug in this unit to a wall outlet until all connections are complete.
- 8 Do not operate this unit upside-down. It may overheat, possibly causing damage.
- 9 Do not use force on switches, knobs and/or cords.
- 10 When disconnecting the power cable from the wall outlet, grasp the plug; do not pull the cable.
- 11 Do not clean this unit with chemical solvents; this might damage the finish. Use a clean, dry cloth.
- 12 Only voltage specified on this unit must be used. Using this unit with a higher voltage than specified is dangerous and may cause fire, damage to this unit, and/or personal injury. Yamaha will not be held responsible for any damage resulting from use of this unit with a voltage other than specified.
- 13 To prevent damage by lightning, keep the power cord and outdoor antennas disconnected from a wall outlet or the unit during a lightning storm.
- 14 Do not attempt to modify or fix this unit. Contact qualified Yamaha service personnel when any service is needed. The cabinet should never be opened for any reasons.
- 15 When not planning to use this unit for long periods of time (i.e. vacation), disconnect the AC power plug from the wall outlet.
- 16 Install this unit near the AC outlet and where the AC power plug can be reached easily.
- 17 Be sure to read the “Troubleshooting” section on common operating errors before concluding that this unit is faulty.
- 18 Before moving this unit, press **ⒶMASTER ON/OFF** to release it outward to the OFF position to turn off this unit, the main room, Zone 2 and Zone 3 and then disconnect the AC power plug from the AC wall outlet.
- 19 **VOLTAGE SELECTOR** (Asia and General models only)  
The VOLTAGE SELECTOR on the rear panel of this unit must be set for your local main voltage BEFORE plugging into the AC wall outlet. Voltages are:  
.....AC 110/120/220/230–240 V, 50/60 Hz
- 20 The batteries shall not be exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire or like.
- 21 Excessive sound pressure from earphones and headphones can cause hearing loss.
- 22 When replacing the batteries, be sure to use batteries of the same type. Danger of explosion may happen if batteries are incorrectly replaced.

### WARNING

TO REDUCE THE RISK OF FIRE OR ELECTRIC SHOCK, DO NOT EXPOSE THIS UNIT TO RAIN OR MOISTURE.

As long as this unit is connected to the AC wall outlet, it is not disconnected from the AC power source even if you turn off this unit by **ⒶMASTER ON/OFF**. In this state, this unit is designed to consume a very small quantity of power.

### ■ For U.K. customers

If the socket outlets in the home are not suitable for the plug supplied with this appliance, it should be cut off and an appropriate 3 pin plug fitted. For details, refer to the instructions described below.

### Note

The plug severed from the mains lead must be destroyed, as a plug with bared flexible cord is hazardous if engaged in a live socket outlet.

### ■ Special Instructions for U.K. Model

### IMPORTANT

THE WIRES IN MAINS LEAD ARE COLOURED IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE FOLLOWING CODE:

Blue: NEUTRAL

Brown: LIVE

As the colours of the wires in the mains lead of this apparatus may not correspond with the coloured markings identifying the terminals in your plug, proceed as follows:

The wire which is coloured BLUE must be connected to the terminal which is marked with the letter N or coloured BLACK. The wire which is coloured BROWN must be connected to the terminal which is marked with the letter L or coloured RED.

Making sure that neither core is connected to the earth terminal of the three pin plug.



### Information for Users on Collection and Disposal of Old Equipment and used Batteries

These symbols on the products, packaging, and/or accompanying documents mean that used electrical and electronic products and batteries should not be mixed with general household waste.

For proper treatment, recovery and recycling of old products and used batteries, please take them to applicable collection points, in accordance with your national legislation and the Directives 2002/96/EC and 2006/66/EC.

By disposing of these products and batteries correctly, you will help to save valuable resources and prevent any potential negative effects on human health and the environment which could otherwise arise from inappropriate waste handling.

For more information about collection and recycling of old products and batteries, please contact your local municipality, your waste disposal service or the point of sale where you purchased the items.

#### [Information on Disposal in other Countries outside the European Union]

These symbols are only valid in the European Union. If you wish to discard these items, please contact your local authorities or dealer and ask for the correct method of disposal.

#### Note for the battery symbol (bottom two symbol examples):

This symbol might be used in combination with a chemical symbol. In this case it complies with the requirement set by the Directive for the chemical involved.



Pb

## Limited Guarantee for European Economic Area (EEA) and Switzerland


Thank you for having chosen a Yamaha product. In the unlikely event that your Yamaha product needs guarantee service, please contact the dealer from whom it was purchased. If you experience any difficulty, please contact Yamaha representative office in your country. You can find full details on our website (<http://www.yamaha-hifi.com/> or <http://www.yamaha-uk.com/> for U.K. resident).

The product is guaranteed to be free from defects in workmanship or materials for a period of two years from the date of the original purchase. Yamaha undertakes, subject to the conditions listed below, to have the faulty product or any part(s) repaired, or replaced at Yamaha's discretion, without any charge for parts or labour. Yamaha reserves the right to replace a product with that of a similar kind and/or value and condition, where a model has been discontinued or is considered uneconomic to repair.

### Conditions

1. The original invoice or sales receipt (showing date of purchase, product code and dealer's name) MUST accompany the defective product, along with a statement detailing the fault. In the absence of this clear proof of purchase, Yamaha reserves the right to refuse to provide free of charge service and the product may be returned at the customer's expense.
2. The product MUST have been purchased from an AUTHORISED Yamaha dealer within the European Economic Area (EEA) or Switzerland.
3. The product must not have been the subject of any modifications or alterations, unless authorised in writing by Yamaha.
4. The following are excluded from this guarantee:
  - a. Periodic maintenance and repair or replacement of parts due to normal wear and tear.
  - b. Damage resulting from:
    - (1) Repairs performed by the customer himself or by an unauthorised third party.
    - (2) Inadequate packaging or mishandling, when the product is in transit from the customer. Please note that it is the customer's responsibility to ensure the product is adequately packaged when returning the product for repair.
    - (3) Misuse, including but not limited to (a) failure to use the product for its normal purpose or in accordance with Yamaha's instructions on the proper use, maintenance and storage, and (b) installation or use of the product in a manner inconsistent with the technical or safety standards in force in the country where it is used.
    - (4) Accidents, lightning, water, fire, improper ventilation, battery leakage or any cause beyond Yamaha's control.
    - (5) Defects of the system into which this product is incorporated and/or incompatibility with third party products.
    - (6) Use of a product imported into the EEA and/or Switzerland, not by Yamaha, where that product does not conform to the technical or safety standards of the country of use and/or to the standard specification of a product sold by Yamaha in the EEA and/or Switzerland.
    - (7) Non AV (Audio Visual) related products.  
(Products subject to "Yamaha AV Guarantee Statement" are defined in our website at <http://www.yamaha-hifi.com/> or <http://www.yamaha-uk.com/> for U.K. resident.)
5. Where the guarantee differs between the country of purchase and the country of use of the product, the guarantee of the country of use shall apply.
6. Yamaha may not be held responsible for any losses or damages, whether direct, consequential or otherwise, save for the repair or replacement of the product.
7. Please backup any custom settings or data, as Yamaha may not be held responsible for any alteration or loss to such settings or data.
8. This guarantee does not affect the consumer's statutory rights under applicable national laws in force or the consumer's rights against the dealer arising from their sales/purchase contract.

## About this manual

-  indicates a tip for your operation.
- Some operations can be performed by using either the buttons on the front panel or the ones on the remote control. In case the button names differ between the front panel and the remote control, the button name on the remote control is given in parentheses.
- This manual is printed prior to production. Design and specifications are subject to change in part as a result of improvements, etc. In case of differences between the manual and product, the product has priority.
- “**Ⓐ MASTER ON/OFF**” or “**ⓓ DVD**” (example) indicates the name of the parts on the front panel or the remote control. Refer to the attached sheet or the pages at the end of this manual for the information about each position of the parts.

## Note on source code distribution

This product includes software code subject to the GNU General Public License (GPL) or the GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL). The copy, distribution, or change of this software code is licensed under the terms of the GPL or the LGPL. The source code is available at the following website:

<http://www.global.yamaha.com/download/>

The source code is also available on a physical media (such as a CD-ROM) at actual cost.

Contact: AV products division, Yamaha Corporation,  
10-1 Nakazawa-cho, Naka-ku, Hamamatsu 430-8650,  
Japan

In principle, the source code is offered for 3 years from the day of purchase.



Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories.  
“Dolby”, “Pro Logic”, and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.



Manufactured under license under U.S. Patent No's:  
5,451,942;5,956,674;5,974,380;5,978,762;6,226,616;6,487,535  
& other U.S. and worldwide patents issued & pending. DTS is a registered trademark and the DTS logos, Symbol, DTS-HD and DTS-HD Master Audio are trademark of DTS, Inc. © 1996-2007 DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

## iPod™

“iPod” is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

# HDMI

“HDMI”, the “HDMI” logo and “High-Definition Multimedia Interface” are trademarks, or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing LLC.

## x.v.Color™

“x.v.Color” is a trademark of Sony Corporation.

SILENT™  
CINEMA

“SILENT CINEMA” is a trademark of Yamaha Corporation.



Fraunhofer  
Institut  
Integrierte Schaltungen

MPEG Layer-3 audio coding technology licensed from  
Fraunhofer IIS and Thomson.

# Contents

## INTRODUCTION

Features .....	3
Supplied accessories .....	3
Getting started .....	4
Quick start guide .....	5

## PREPARATION

Connections .....	9
Optimizing the speaker setting for your listening room .....	29
Before starting the automatic setup .....	29
Basic automatic setup .....	29
Advanced automatic setup .....	32
Reloading the automatic setup parameters .....	33

## BASIC OPERATION

Playback .....	34
Basic procedure .....	34
Selecting audio input jacks (AUDIO SELECT) .....	35
Selecting the multi-channel input component .....	35
Using your headphones .....	35
Muting the audio output .....	36
Displaying the input source information (SIGNAL INFO) .....	36
Using the sleep timer .....	37
Sound field programs .....	38
Selecting sound field programs .....	38
Using CINEMA DSP 3D mode .....	44
Enjoying unprocessed input sources .....	44
Using audio features .....	45
Enjoying pure hi-fi sound .....	45
Adjusting the tonal quality .....	45
Adjusting the speaker level .....	45
FM/AM tuning .....	46
Overview .....	46
FM/AM tuning operations .....	46
Preset FM/AM stations .....	47
Radio Data System tuning (Europe and Russia models only) .....	49
Selecting the Radio Data System program type (PTY SEEK mode) .....	49
Using the enhanced other networks (EON) data service .....	50
Displaying the Radio Data System information .....	50
Using iPod™ .....	52
Controlling iPod™ .....	52
Using Bluetooth™ components .....	54
Pairing the Bluetooth™ receiver and your Bluetooth component .....	54
Playback of the Bluetooth™ component .....	54
Using USB features .....	55
Using shortcut buttons .....	56

## ADVANCED OPERATION

Advanced sound configurations .....	58
Selecting decoders .....	58
Changing sound field parameter settings .....	59
Customizing this unit (MANUAL SETUP) .....	66
Operating the MANUAL SETUP menu .....	66
1 SPEAKER MENU .....	67
2 VOLUME MENU .....	69
3 SOUND MENU .....	70
4 VIDEO MENU .....	72
5 INPUT MENU .....	73
6 OPTION MENU .....	75
Saving and recalling the system settings (SYSTEM MEMORY) .....	78
Saving the system settings .....	78
Loading the system settings .....	79
Using examples .....	80
Remote control features .....	81
Controlling this unit, a TV, or other components .....	81
Setting remote control codes .....	83
Programming codes from other remote controls .....	85
Changing source names in the display window .....	86
Macro programming features .....	87
Clearing configurations .....	89
Simplified remote control .....	90
Using multi-zone configuration .....	91
Connecting the Zone 2 and Zone 3 components .....	91
Controlling Zone 2 or Zone 3 .....	92
Advanced setup .....	94
Using the advanced setup menu .....	94

## ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

Troubleshooting .....	96
Resetting the system .....	106
Glossary .....	107
Sound field program information .....	111
Parametric equalizer information .....	112
Specifications .....	113
SET MENU tree .....	115
Index .....	117

## APPENDIX

### (at the end of this manual)

Front panel .....	i
Remote control .....	ii
Sound output in each sound field program .....	iii
GPL/LGPL .....	v
List of remote control codes .....	ix

“**Ⓐ** MASTER ON/OFF” or “**Ⓢ** DVD” (example) indicates the name of the parts on the front panel or the remote control. Refer to the attached sheet or the pages at the end of this manual for the information about each position of the parts.

## What you can do with MANUAL SETUP

By configuring the parameters in “MANUAL SETUP”, you can adjust a variety of system settings suited for your listening environment. The following is a brief description of some of the useful menus you can configure in “MANUAL SETUP”. For more detailed information, see “Customizing this unit (MANUAL SETUP)” (page 66) and “SET MENU tree” (page 115).

### Fine adjusting the speaker settings

In case speaker settings configured by automatic setup does not match your listening environment, you can configure them manually.

SPEAKER MENU → CONFIG (page 67)

SPEAKER MENU → LEVEL (page 68)

SPEAKER MENU → DISTANCE (page 68)

### Specifying the muting type

In case you do not want to fully mute audio when you receive a call while watching your favorite TV program, you can use this menu to specify the muting level.

VOLUME MENU → MUTING TYPE (page 70)

### Specifying the initial volume level

By adjusting this parameter, you can automatically control the initial volume level regardless of the recording level of the audio source.

VOLUME MENU → INIT. VOL. (page 70)

### Adjusting the dynamic range

The dynamic range is the difference between the minimum and maximum amplitude. The higher the dynamic range, the more accurate the sound reproduction for bitstream signals. You can adjust the dynamic range for speakers and headphones individually.

SOUND MENU → DYNAMIC RANGE (page 71)

### Adjusting the audio and video synchronization

Sometimes, depending on your video source component, video is delayed relative to audio due to processing problems. In this case, you need to manually adjust the audio delay to keep it synchronized with the video. If you connect the video source component to this unit using an HDMI connection and your component supports the LIPSYNC feature, you can adjust the audio/video synchronization automatically.

SOUND MENU → LIPSYNC (page 71)

### Changing input/output assignment

In case the initial input/output assignments do not correspond to your needs, you can rearrange them according to your component to be connected to this unit. You can also edit the input name to be displayed in the front panel or in the OSD as necessary.

INPUT MENU → (input source) → I/O ASSIGNMENT (page 74)

INPUT MENU → (input source) → INPUT RENAME (page 74)

### Fixing the volume difference between input sources

The sound output level may vary depending on the audio source components connected to this unit. In this case, you can reduce or increase the output level of each input source using this feature.

INPUT MENU → (input source) → VOL. TRIM (page 74)

### Setting the background video for audio sources

If you want to enjoy video images in combination with music playback or radio, configure this setting to specify the video input source. For example, to view DVD video images while listening to the FM radio, set this setting under “TUNER” to “DVD”.

INPUT MENU → (input source) → BGV (page 74)

### Adjusting the brightness of the front panel display

You can make the front panel display darker or brighter by configuring this setting.

OPTION MENU → DISPLAY SET → DIMMER (page 75)

### Turning on or off the short message display

Each time you operate this unit using controls on the front panel or remote control keys, this unit displays short messages on the OSD. If you want to turn off the short message display, select “OFF” in this setting (Initial factory setting is “ON”).

OPTION MENU → DISPLAY SET → SHORT MESSAGE (page 76)

### Setting the amount of time to display OSD information

You can set the amount of time to display iPod menu or USB menu in the OSD after you perform a certain operation.

OPTION MENU → DISPLAY SET → ON SCREEN (page 76)

### Protecting the setup values

After you have configured the sound field program parameters and other system settings, you can use this feature to prevent accidental changes to those setup values.

OPTION MENU → MEMORY GUARD (page 76)

# Features

## Built-in 7-channel power amplifier

- ◆ Minimum RMS output power (20 Hz to 20 kHz, 0.04% THD, 8 Ω)  
Front: 130 W + 130 W  
Center: 130 W  
Surround: 130 W + 130 W  
Surround back: 130 W + 130 W

## Various input/output connectors

- ◆ HDMI (IN x 4, OUT x 1), Component video (IN x 3, OUT x 1), S-video (IN x 6, OUT x 3), Composite video (IN x 6, OUT x 3), Coaxial digital audio (IN x 3), Optical digital audio (IN x 5, OUT x 2), Analog audio (IN x 10, OUT x 3)
- ◆ Speaker out (7-channel), Pre out (7-channel), Subwoofer out, Presence out, Zone 2/Zone 3 out
- ◆ Discrete multi-channel input (6 or 8-channel)

## Sound field programs

- ◆ Proprietary Yamaha technology for the creation of sound fields
- ◆ CINEMA DSP 3D
- ◆ Compressed Music Enhancer mode
- ◆ Virtual CINEMA DSP
- ◆ SILENT CINEMA

## Digital audio decoders

- ◆ Dolby TrueHD, Dolby Digital Plus decoder
- ◆ DTS-HD Master Audio, DTS-HD High Resolution Audio decoder
- ◆ Dolby Digital/Dolby Digital EX decoder
- ◆ DTS/DTS-ES Matrix 6.1, Discrete 6.1, DTS 96/24 decoder
- ◆ Dolby Pro Logic/Dolby Pro Logic II/Dolby Pro Logic IIx decoder
- ◆ DTS NEO:6 decoder

## Sophisticated FM/AM tuner

- ◆ 40-station random and direct preset tuning
- ◆ Automatic preset tuning
- ◆ Radio Data System capability (Europe model only)

## HDMI™ (High-Definition Multimedia Interface)

- ◆ HDMI interface for standard, enhanced or high-definition video as well as multi-channel digital audio based on HDMI version 1.3a (HDMI is licensed by HDMI Licensing, LLC.)
  - Automatic audio and video synchronization (lip sync) information capability

- Deep Color video signal (30/36 bit) transmission capability
- “x.v.Color” video signal transmission capability
- High refresh rate and high resolution video signals capability
- High definition digital audio format signals capability
- ◆ HDCP (High-bandwidth Digital Content Protection System) licensed by Digital Content Protection, LLC.
- ◆ Analog video to HDMI digital video up-conversion (composite video ↔ S-video ↔ component video → HDMI digital video) capability for monitor out
- ◆ Analog video up-scaling from 480i (NTSC)/576i (PAL) or 480p/576p to 720p, 1080i or 1080p

## DOCK terminal

- ◆ DOCK terminal to connect a Yamaha iPod universal dock (such as YDS-11, sold separately) or Bluetooth wireless audio receiver (such as YBA-10, sold separately)

## USB features

- ◆ USB port to connect a USB memory device or a USB portable audio player

## Automatic speaker setup features

- ◆ Advanced YPAO (Yamaha Parametric room Acoustic Optimizer) for automatic speaker setup
- ◆ Multi-point measurement feature for multiple listening positions
- ◆ Parametric equalizer select feature

## Other features

- ◆ 192-kHz/24-bit D/A converter
- ◆ OSD (on-screen display) menus that allow you to optimize this unit to suit your individual audiovisual system
- ◆ Analog video interlace/progressive conversion from 480i (NTSC)/576i (PAL) to 480p/576p
- ◆ Pure Direct mode for pure hi-fi sound for all sources
- ◆ Adaptive dynamic range controlling capability
- ◆ Adaptive DSP effect level controlling capability
- ◆ Remote control with preset remote control codes, learning and macro capability
- ◆ ZONE 2/ZONE 3 custom installation facility
- ◆ Zone switching capability between the main zone and ZONE 2/ZONE 3 using ZONE CONTROLS
- ◆ SYSTEM MEMORY capability for saving and recalling multiple system parameter settings
- ◆ Sleep timer for each zone

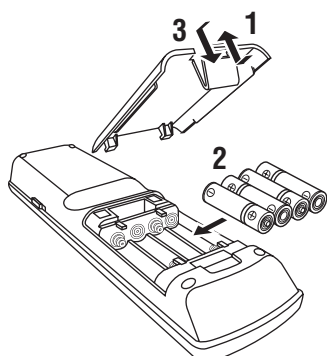
## Supplied accessories

Check that you received all of the following parts.

- Remote control
- Simplified remote control (except Europe model)
- Batteries (4) (AAA, R03, UM-4)
- Power cable (Two for Asia model)
- Optimizer microphone
- AM loop antenna
- Indoor FM antenna
- Speaker terminal wrench

# Getting started

## ■ Installing batteries in the remote control



**1** Take off the battery compartment cover.

**2** Insert the four supplied batteries (AAA, R03, UM-4) according to the polarity markings (+ and -) on the inside of the battery compartment.

**3** Snap the battery compartment cover back into place.

### Notes

- Change all of the batteries if you notice the following conditions:
  - the operation range of the remote control decreases.
  - the transmit indicator does not flash or its light becomes dim.
- Do not use old batteries together with new ones.
- Do not use different types of batteries (such as alkaline and manganese batteries) together. Read the packaging carefully as these different types of batteries may have the same shape and color.
- If the batteries have leaked, dispose of them immediately. Avoid touching the leaked material or letting it come into contact with clothing, etc. Clean the battery compartment thoroughly before installing new batteries.
- Do not throw away batteries with general house waste; dispose of them correctly in accordance with your local regulations.
- If the remote control is without batteries for more than 2 minutes, or if exhausted batteries remain in the remote control, the contents of the memory may be cleared. When the memory is cleared, insert new batteries, set up the remote control code and program any acquired functions that may have been cleared.

## ■ VOLTAGE SELECTOR (Asia and General models only)

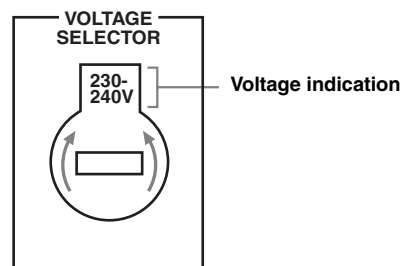
### Caution

The VOLTAGE SELECTOR on the rear panel of this unit must be set for your local voltage BEFORE plugging the power cable into the AC wall outlet. Improper setting of the VOLTAGE SELECTOR may cause damage to this unit and create a potential fire hazard.

Rotate the VOLTAGE SELECTOR clockwise or counterclockwise to the correct position using a straight slot screwdriver.

Voltages are as follows:

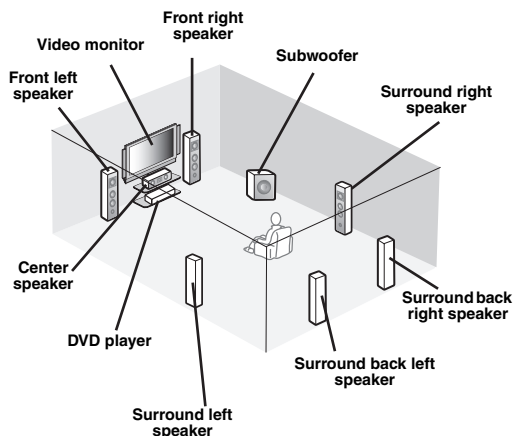
.....AC 110/120/220/230–240 V, 50/60 Hz





# Quick start guide

The following steps describe the easiest way to enjoy DVD movie playback in your home theater.



## Step 1: Set up your speakers

P. 6

## Step 2: Connect your DVD player and other components

P. 7

## Step 3: Turn on the power and start playback

P. 8

**Enjoy DVD playback!**

## Preparation: Check the items

In these steps, you need the following supplied accessories.

- Power cable**

The following items are not included in the package of this unit.

- Speakers**
  - Front speaker** ..... x 2
  - Center speaker** ..... x 1
  - Surround speaker** ..... x 4

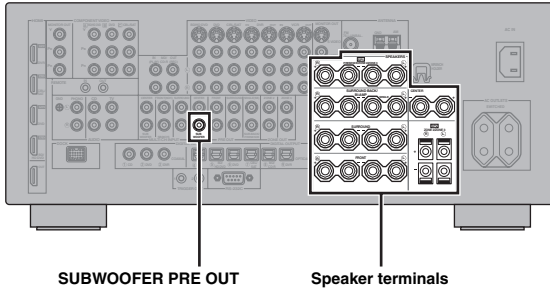
Select magnetically shielded speakers. The minimum required speakers are two front speakers. The priority of the requirement of other speakers is as follows:

1. Two surround speakers
2. One center speaker
3. One (or two) surround back speaker(s)

- Active subwoofer** ..... x 1  
Select an active subwoofer equipped with an RCA input jack.
- Speaker cable** ..... x 7
- Subwoofer cable** ..... x 1  
Select a monaural RCA cable.
- DVD player** ..... x 1  
Select DVD player equipped with coaxial digital audio output jack and composite video output jack.
- Video monitor** ..... x 1  
Select a TV monitor, video monitor or projector equipped with a composite video input jack.
- Video cable** ..... x 2  
Select RCA composite video cables.
- Digital coaxial audio cable** ..... x 1

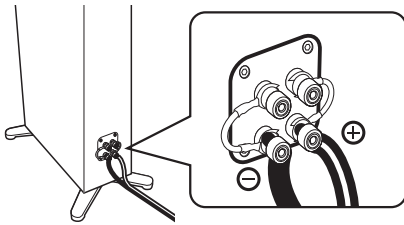
## Step 1: Set up your speakers

Place your speakers in the room and connect them to this unit.

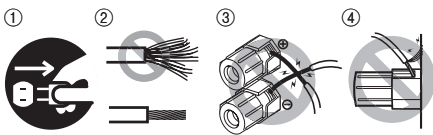


**1** Place your speakers and subwoofer in the room.

**2** Connect speaker cables to each speaker.



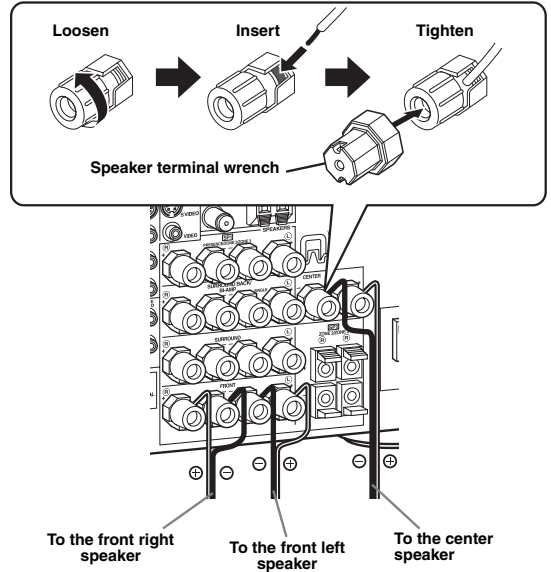
**3** Connect each speaker cable to the corresponding speaker terminal of this unit.



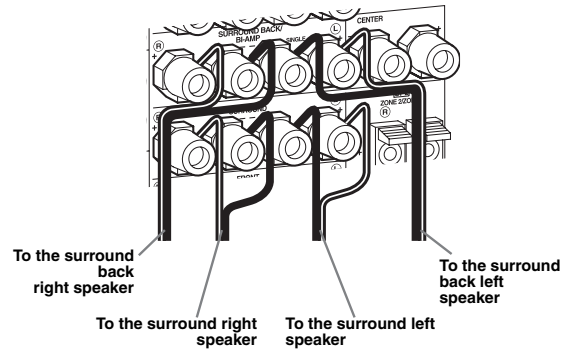
- ① Make sure that this unit and the subwoofer are unplugged from the AC wall outlets.
- ② Twist the exposed wires of the speaker cables together to prevent short circuits.
- ③ Do not let the bare speaker wires touch each other.
- ④ Do not let the bare speaker wires touch any metal part of this unit.

Be sure to connect the left channel (L), right channel (R), “+” (red) and “-” (black) properly.

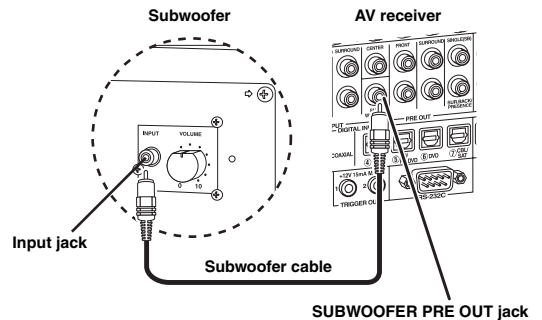
### Front speakers and center speaker



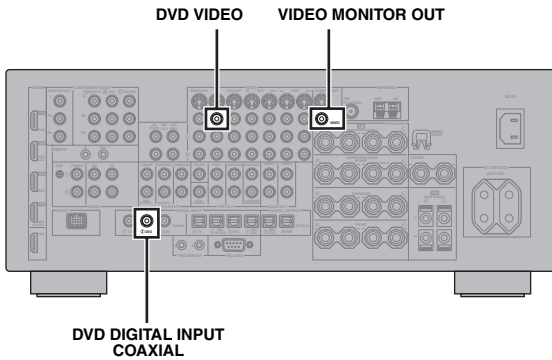
### Surround and surround back speakers



**4** Connect the subwoofer cable to the SUBWOOFER PRE OUT jack of this unit and the input jack of the subwoofer.

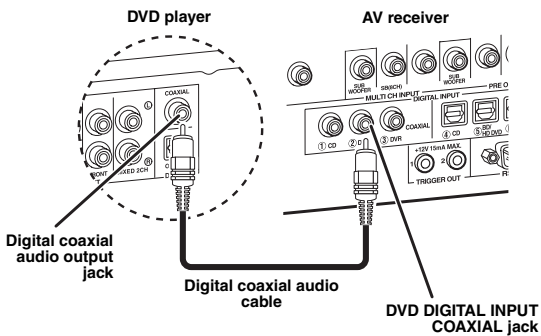


## Step 2: Connect your DVD player and other components

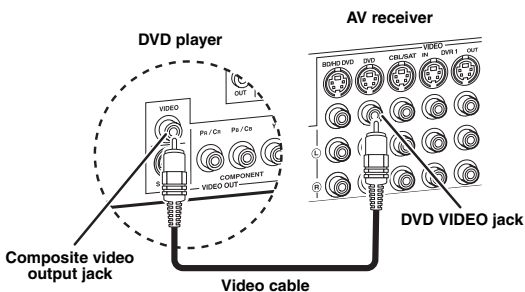


Make sure that this unit and the DVD player are unplugged from the AC wall outlets.

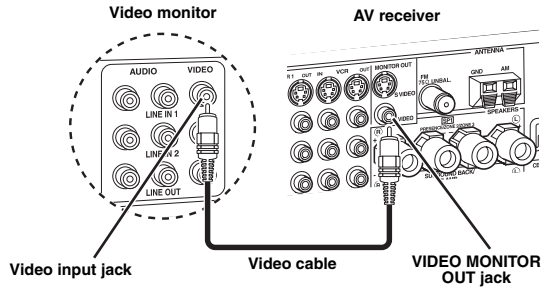
- 1 Connect the digital coaxial audio cable to the digital coaxial audio output jack of your DVD player and the DVD DIGITAL INPUT COAXIAL jack of this unit.



- 2 Connect the video cable to the composite video output jack of your DVD player and DVD VIDEO jack of this unit.



- 3 Connect the video cable to the VIDEO MONITOR OUT jack of this unit and the video input jack of your video monitor.



- 4 Connect the supplied power cable to this unit and then plug of the power cable and other components into the AC wall outlet.



For details about connecting the power cable, see page 24.

### ■ For other connections

- Other speaker combinations P. 12
- Information on jacks and cable plugs P. 15
- Information on HDMI™ P. 16
- TV monitor or projector P. 18
- Other components P. 19
- External amplifier P. 21
- Multi-format player or external decoder P. 22
- Yamaha iPod universal dock or Bluetooth wireless audio receiver P. 22
- FM/AM antennas P. 23
- USB memory device or USB portable audio player P. 23

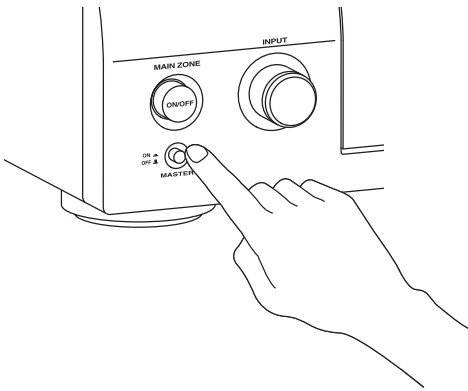
## Step 3: Turn on the power and start playback

### Check the type of the connected speakers.

If the speakers are 6-ohm speakers, set "SPEAKER IMP:" to "6Ω MIN" before using this unit (page 25). You can also use 4-ohm speakers as the front speakers (page 94).

**1** Turn on the video monitor connected to this unit.

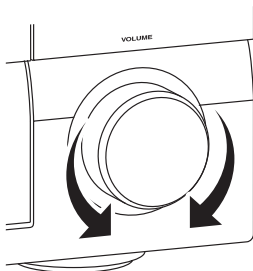
**2** Press **Ⓐ** **MASTER ON/OFF** inward to the ON position on the front panel.



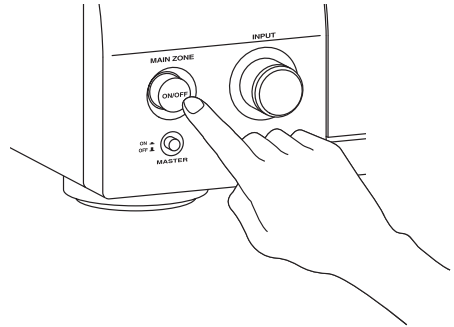
**3** Rotate the **Ⓒ** **INPUT** selector to set the input source to "DVD".

**4** Start playback of the desired DVD on your player.

**5** Rotate **Ⓓ** **VOLUME** to adjust the volume.



**6** To set this unit to the standby mode, press **Ⓑ** **MAIN ZONE ON/OFF**.



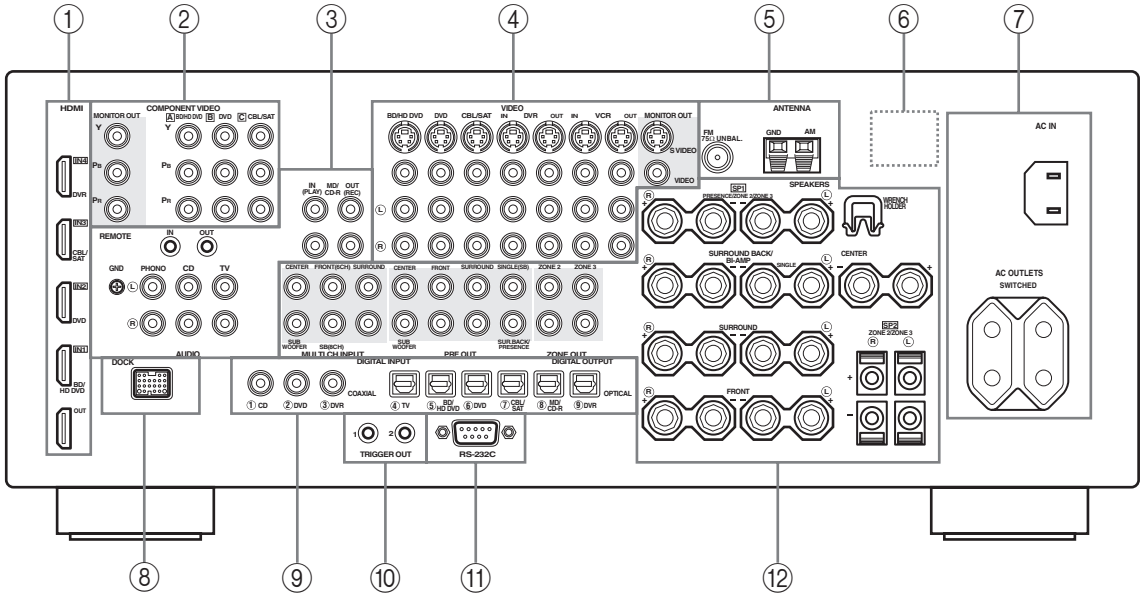
For details about turning on/off this unit and the standby mode, see pages 25.

### ■ For other operations

- Optimizing the speaker parameters automatically 🔊 P. 29
- Basic playback operations 🔊 P. 34
- Sound field programs 🔊 P. 38
- Pure high-fidelity sounds 🔊 P. 45
- FM/AM radio tuning 🔊 P. 46
- iPod playback 🔊 P. 52
- Bluetooth component playback 🔊 P. 54
- USB content playback 🔊 P. 55

# Connections

## Rear panel



	Name	Page
①	HDMI jacks	16
②	COMPONENT VIDEO jacks	15
③	Audio component jacks	15
	REMOTE IN/OUT jacks	22, 91
④	Video component jacks	15
⑤	ANTENNA terminals	23
⑥	VOLTAGE SELECTOR (Asia and General models only)	24
⑦	AC IN	24
	AC OUTLET(S)	24
⑧	DOCK terminal	22
⑨	DIGITAL INPUT/OUTPUT jacks	15
⑩	TRIGGER OUT jacks	—
⑪	RS-232C terminal	—
⑫	MULTI CH INPUT jacks	22
	PRE OUT jacks	21
	ZONE OUT jacks	91
	Speaker terminals	12
	WRENCH HOLDER	14

### Notes

- The TRIGGER OUT jacks are control expansion terminals for custom installation.
- The RS-232C terminal is a control expansion terminal for factory use only. Consult your dealer for details.

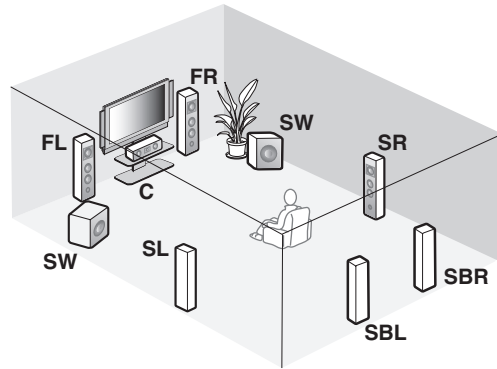
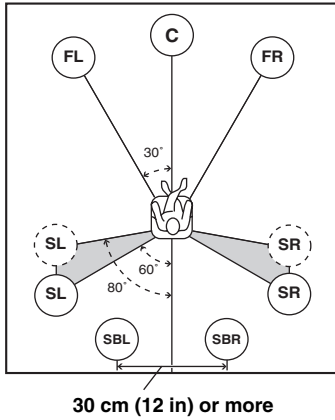
## Placing speakers

The speaker layout below shows the speaker setting we recommend.

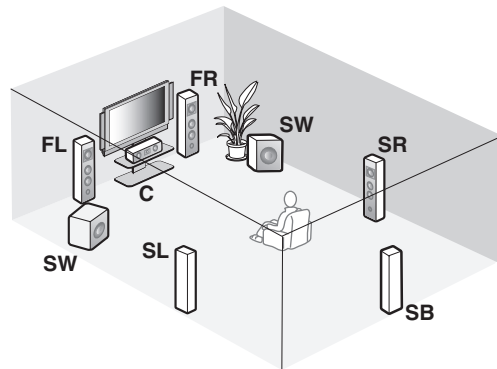
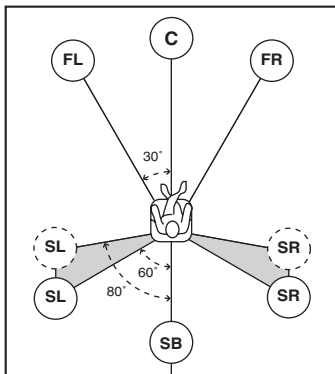


- 7.1-channel speaker layout is highly recommended for playback of the high definition digital audio sources (Dolby TrueHD, DTS-HD Master Audio, etc.) with sound field programs.
- We recommend that you add the presence speakers for the effect sounds of the CINEMA DSP sound field program.

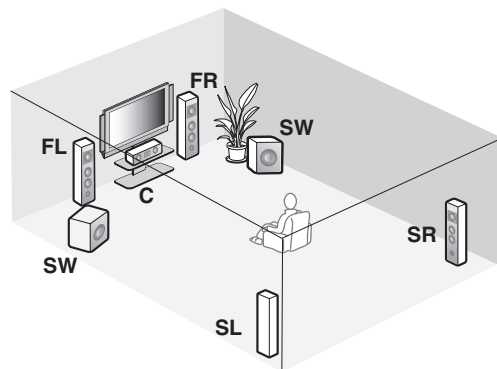
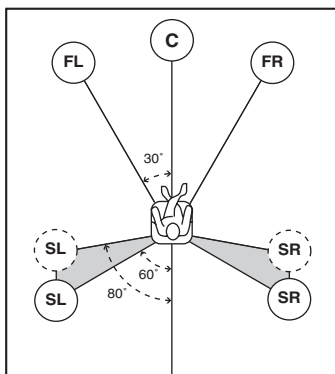
### 7.1-channel speaker layout



### 6.1-channel speaker layout



### 5.1-channel speaker layout



## ■ Speaker types

### Front left and right speakers (FL and FR)

The front speakers are used for the main source sound plus effect sounds. Place these speakers at an equal distance from the ideal listening position. The distance of each speaker from each side of the video monitor should be the same.

### Center speaker (C)

The center speaker is for the center channel sounds (dialog, vocals, etc.). If for some reason it is not practical to use a center speaker, you can do without it. Best results, however, are obtained with the full system.

### Surround left and right speakers (SL and SR)

The surround speakers are used for effect and surround sounds.

For 5.1-channel speaker layout, place these speakers farther back compared with the placement in the 7.1-channel speaker layout.

### Surround back left and right speakers (SBL and SBR) / Surround back speaker (SB)

The surround back speakers supplement the surround speakers and provide more realistic front-to-back transitions.

For 6.1-channel speaker layout, surround back left and right channel signals are mixed down and output at the single surround back speaker by configuring the “SUR.B L/R SP” setting (page 68).

For 5.1-channel speaker layout, surround back left and right channel signals are output at the surround left and right speakers by configuring the “SUR.B L/R SP” setting (page 68).

### Subwoofer (SW)

The use of a subwoofer with a built-in amplifier, such as the Yamaha Active Servo Processing Subwoofer System, is effective not only for reinforcing bass frequencies from any or all channels, but also for reproducing the high fidelity sound of the LFE (low-frequency effect) channel included in bitstreams and multi-channel PCM sources.

The position of the subwoofer is not so critical, because low bass sounds are not highly directional. But it is better to place the subwoofer near the front speakers. Turn it slightly toward the center of the room to reduce wall reflections.

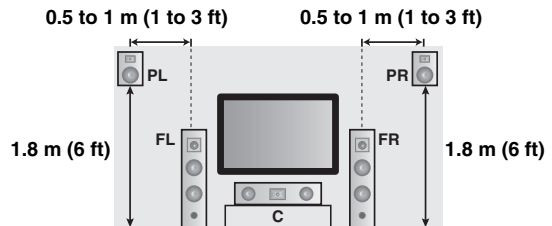
#### For other speaker combinations

You can enjoy multi-channel sources with sound field programs by using a speaker combination other than the 7.1/6.1/5.1-channel speaker combinations.

Use the automatic setup feature (page 29) or set the “SPEAKER MENU” parameters (page 67) to output the surround sounds at the connected speakers.

## ■ Presence left and right speakers (PL and PR)

The presence speakers supplement the sound from the front speakers with extra ambient effects produced by the sound field programs (page 38). We recommend that you use the presence speakers especially for the CINEMA DSP sound field programs. To use the presence speakers, connect the speakers to SP1 speaker terminals and then set “PRESENCE SP” to “YES” (page 68).



## Connecting speakers

Be sure to connect the left channel (L), right channel (R), “+” (red) and “-” (black) properly. If the connections are faulty, this unit cannot reproduce the input sources accurately.

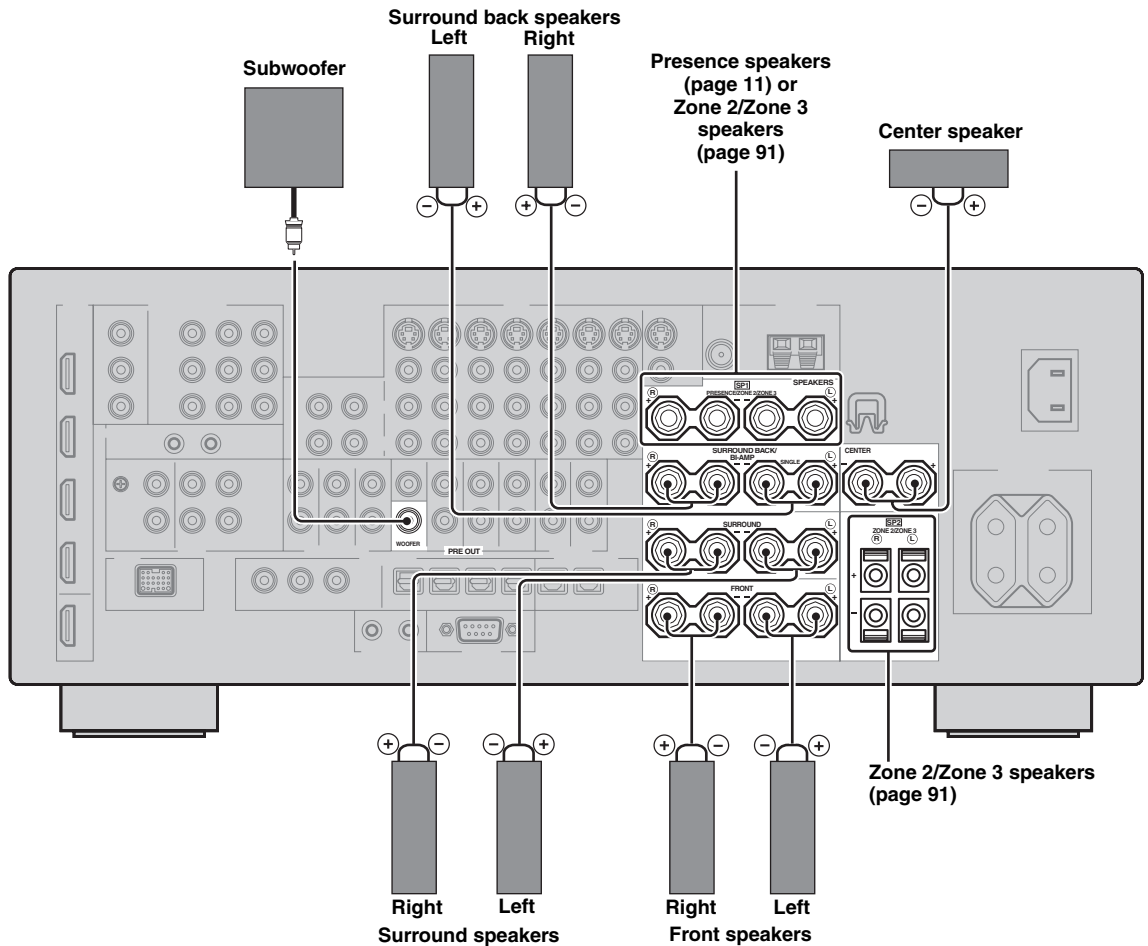
### Caution

- Before connecting the speakers, make sure that this unit is turned off (page 25).
- Do not let the bare speaker wires touch each other or do not let them touch any metal part of this unit. This could damage this unit and/or speakers.
- Use magnetically shielded speakers. If this type of speaker still creates interference with the monitor, place the speakers away from the monitor.
- If you are to use 6-ohm speakers, be sure to set “SPEAKER IMP.” to “6Ω MIN” before using this unit (page 25). You can also use 4-ohm speakers as the front speakers (page 94).

### Notes

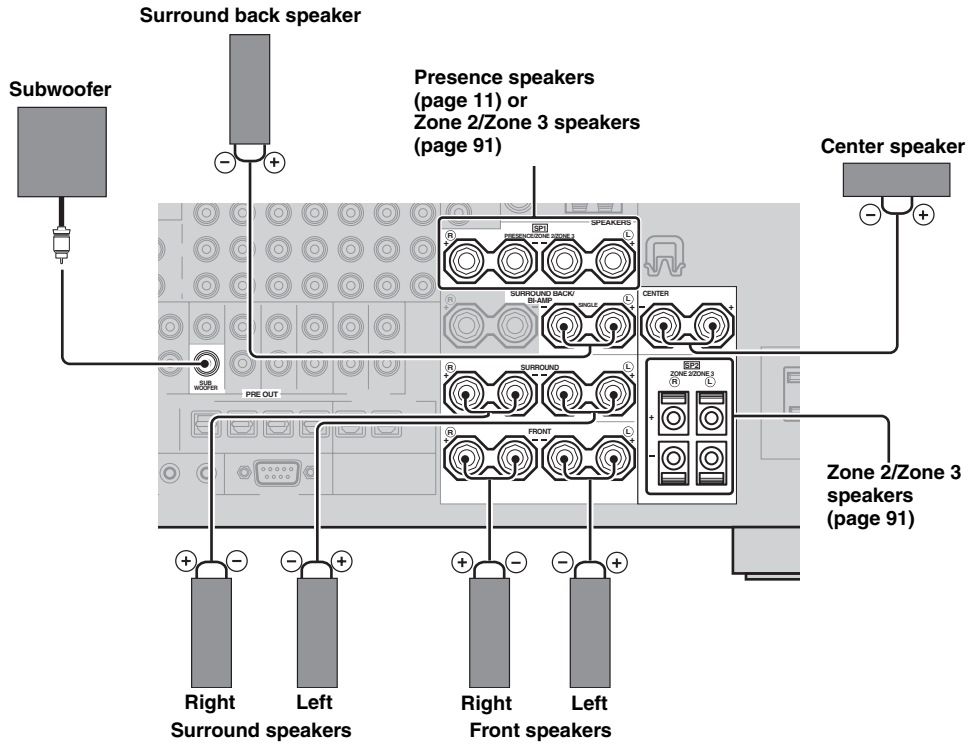
- A speaker cord is actually a pair of insulated cables running side by side. Cables are colored or shaped differently, perhaps with a stripe, groove or ridge. Connect the striped (grooved, etc.) cable to the “+” (red) terminals of this unit and your speaker. Connect the plain cable to the “-” (black) terminals.
- You can connect both surround back and presence speakers to this unit, however they do not output sound simultaneously. This unit automatically switches the presence speakers and surround back speakers depending on the input sources and the selected sound field programs.

### ■ 7.1-channel speaker connection

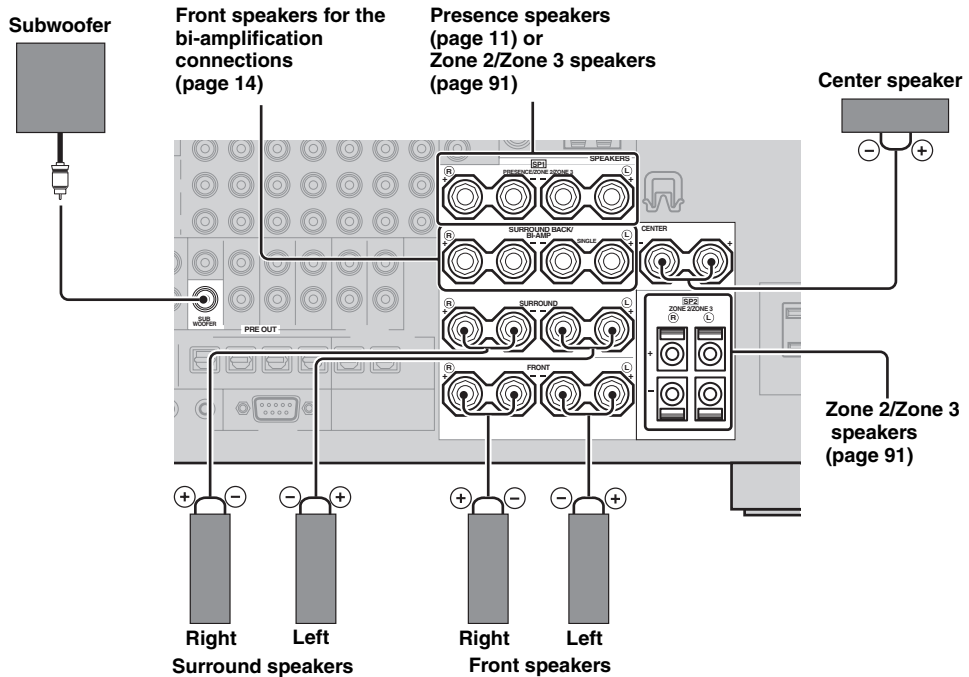




■ 6.1-channel speaker connection

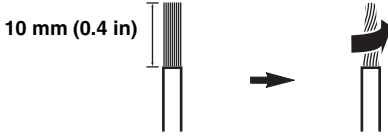


■ 5.1-channel speaker connection

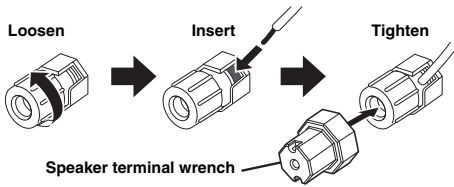


■ Connecting the speaker cable

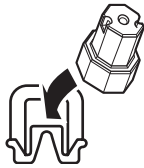
- 1 Remove approximately 10 mm (0.4 in) of insulation from the end of each speaker cable and then twist the exposed wires of the cable together to prevent short circuits.



- 2 Loosen the knob using the supplied speaker terminal wrench, insert one bare wire into the hole and then tighten the knob.



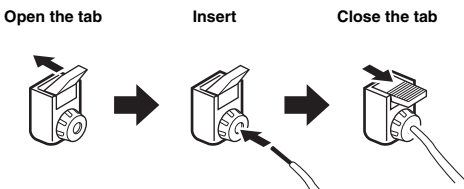
- 3 Hook the speaker terminal wrench onto WRENCH HOLDER on the rear panel of this unit when not in use.



■ Connecting to the SP2 speaker terminals

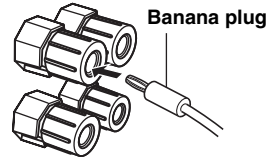
Connect Zone 2 or Zone 3 speakers to these terminals (page 91).

Open the tab, insert one bare wire into the hole and then close the tab.



■ Connecting the banana plug (Except U.K., Europe, Asia and Korea models)

Tighten the knob using the supplied speaker terminal wrench and then insert the banana plug into the end of the terminal.

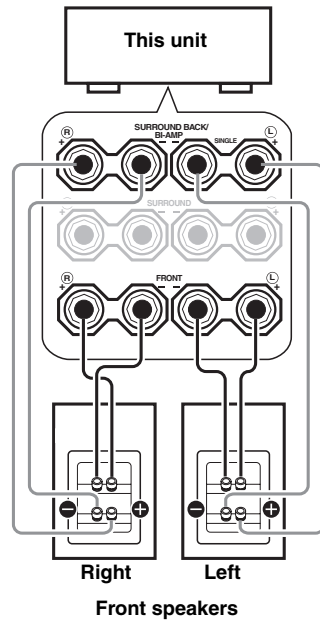


You can also use the banana plug with the SP2 speaker terminals. Open the tab and then insert one banana plug into the hole on the terminal. Do not close the tab after connecting the banana plug.

■ Using bi-amplification connections

**Caution**  
Remove the shorting bars or bridges of your speakers to separate the LPF (low pass filter) and HPF (high pass filter) crossovers.

You can make bi-amplification connections to one speaker system which supports bi-amplification connection as shown below. To activate the connections, configure the “BI-AMP” setting (page 95).



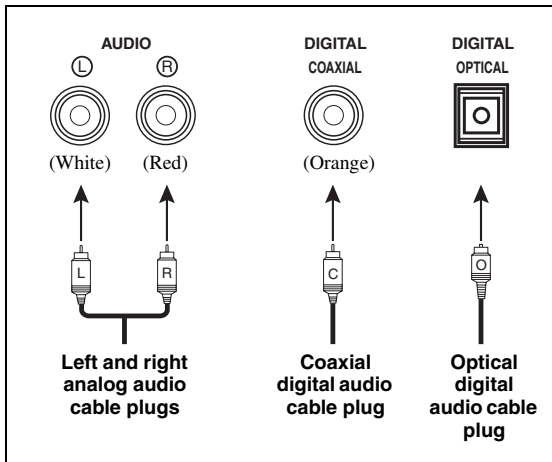
**Note**

When you make the conventional connection with the speakers, make sure that the shorting bars are put into the terminals of the speakers appropriately. Refer to the instruction manuals of the speakers for details.

## Information on jacks and cable plugs

This unit has three types of audio jacks, three types of video jacks and HDMI jacks. You can choose the connection method depending on the component to be connected.

### ■ Audio jacks



#### AUDIO jacks

For conventional analog audio signals transmitted via left and right analog audio cables. Connect red plugs to the right jacks and white plugs to the left jacks.

#### COAXIAL jacks

For digital audio signals transmitted via coaxial digital audio cables.

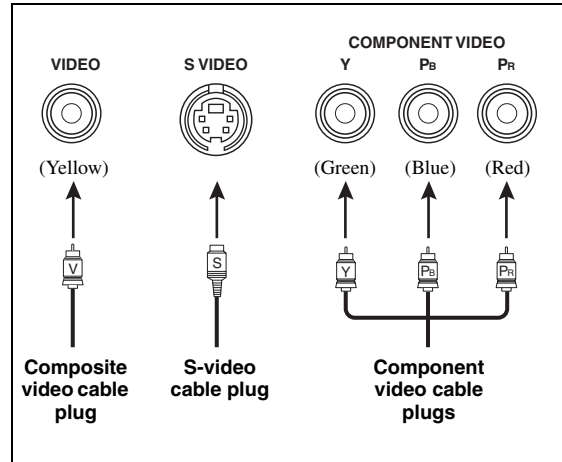
#### OPTICAL jacks

For digital audio signals transmitted via optical digital audio cables.

#### Note

You can use the digital jacks to input PCM, Dolby Digital and DTS bitstreams. When you connect components to both the COAXIAL and OPTICAL jacks, priority is given to the signals input at the COAXIAL jack. All digital input jacks are compatible with up to 96-kHz sampling digital signals.

### ■ Video jacks



#### VIDEO jacks

For conventional composite video signals transmitted via composite video cables.

#### S VIDEO jacks

For S-video signals, separated into the luminance (Y) and chrominance (C) video signals transmitted on separate wires of S-video cables.

#### COMPONENT VIDEO jacks

For component video signals, separated into the luminance (Y) and chrominance (Pb, Pr) video signals transmitted on separate wires of component video cables.

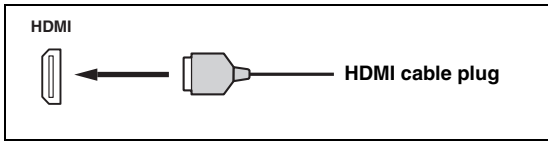


This unit is equipped with the video conversion function. (page 17)

## Information on HDMI™

This unit has four HDMI input jacks and one HDMI output jack for digital audio and video signal input/output.

### ■ HDMI jack and cable plug



- We recommend that you use a commercially available HDMI cable shorter than 5 meters (16 feet) with the HDMI logo printed on it.
- Use a conversion cable (HDMI jack ↔ DVI-D jack) to connect this unit to other DVI components.
- You can check the potential problem about the HDMI connection (page 36).
- This unit is equipped with the video conversion function (page 17).

#### Notes

- Do not disconnect or connect the cable or turn off the power of the HDMI components connected to the HDMI OUT jack of this unit while data is being transferred. Doing so may disrupt playback or cause noise.
- The HDMI OUT jack outputs the audio signals input at the HDMI input jacks only.
- If you turn off the video monitor connected to the HDMI OUT jack via a DVI connection, the connection may fail.

### ■ HDMI signal compatibility with this unit

#### Audio signals

Audio signal types	Audio signal formats	Compatible media
2ch Linear PCM	2ch, 32-192 kHz, 16/20/24 bit	CD, DVD-Video, DVD-Audio, etc.
Multi-ch Linear PCM	8ch, 32-192 kHz, 16/20/24 bit	DVD-Audio, etc.
DSD	2/5.1ch, 2.8224 MHz, 1 bit	SACD, etc.
Bitstream	Dolby Digital, DTS	DVD-Video, etc.
Bitstream (High definition audio)	Dolby TrueHD, Dolby Digital Plus, DTS-HD Master Audio, DTS-HD High Resolution Audio	Blu-ray Disc, HD DVD, etc.



- If the input source component can decode the bitstream audio signals of audio commentaries, you can play back the audio sources with the audio commentaries mixed down by using the following connections:
  - multi-channel analog audio input (page 22)
  - DIGITAL INPUT OPTICAL (or COAXIAL)

- Refer to the instruction manuals of the input source component, and set the component appropriately.

#### Notes

- When CPPM copy-protected DVD audio is played back, video and audio signals may not be output depending on the type of the DVD player.
- This unit is not compatible with HDCP-incompatible HDMI or DVI components.
- To decode the audio bitstream signals on this unit, set the input source component appropriately so that the component outputs the audio bitstream signals directly (does not decode the bitstream signals on the component).
- This unit is not compatible with the audio commentary features (for example, the special audio contents downloaded via Internet) of Blu-ray Disc or HD DVD. This unit does not play back the audio commentaries of the Blu-ray Disc or HD DVD contents.

#### Video signals

This unit is compatible with the video signals of the following resolutions:

- 480i/60 Hz
- 576i/50 Hz
- 480p/60 Hz
- 576p/50 Hz
- 720p/60 Hz, 50 Hz
- 1080i/60 Hz, 50 Hz
- 1080p/60 Hz, 50 Hz, 24Hz

#### Compatibility with Deep Color and x.v.Color video signals

This unit accepts Deep Color (30 or 36-bit) and x.v.Color video signals. To output those video signals from the HDMI OUT jack without any processing, set “HDMI RES.” to “THRGH” (page 73).

#### Note

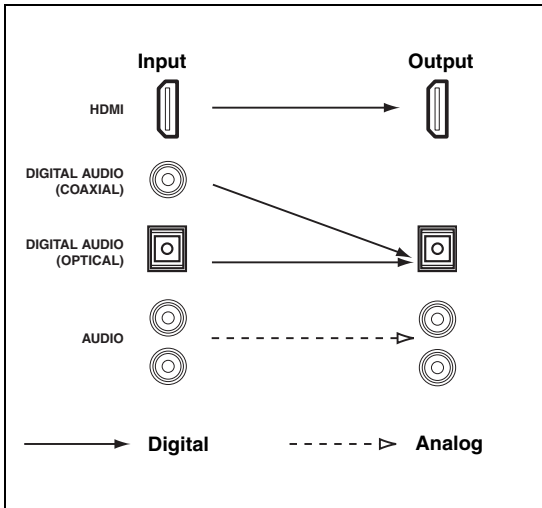
If the video monitor is not compatible with Deep Color or x.v.Color video signals, the video source may not be played back correctly.

### ■ Default input assignment of HDMI input jacks

HDMI input jack	Assigned input source
IN1	BD/HD DVD
IN2	DVD
IN3	CBL/SAT
IN4	DVR

## Audio and video signal flow

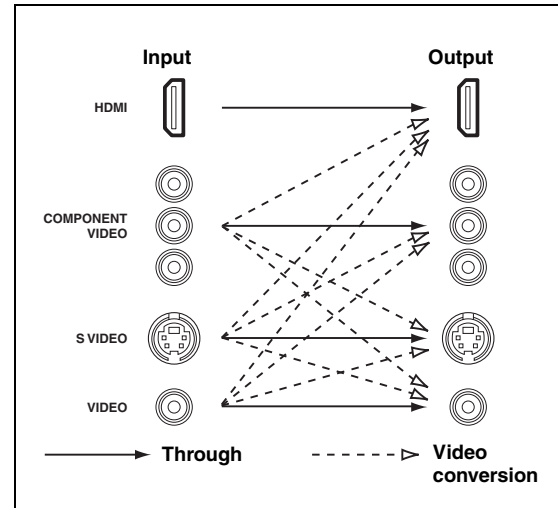
### Audio signal flow



#### Note

Only the HDMI input jacks support DSD, Dolby TrueHD, Dolby Digital Plus, DTS-HD Master Audio and DTS-HD High Resolution Audio signal inputs.

### Video signal flow



- To set the video conversion or change other video settings, configure the “VIDEO MENU” parameters (page 72).
- If different analog video signals are input concurrently, the following priority order will be applied: (1) COMPONENT VIDEO, (2) S VIDEO, (3) VIDEO.

## Connecting a TV monitor or projector



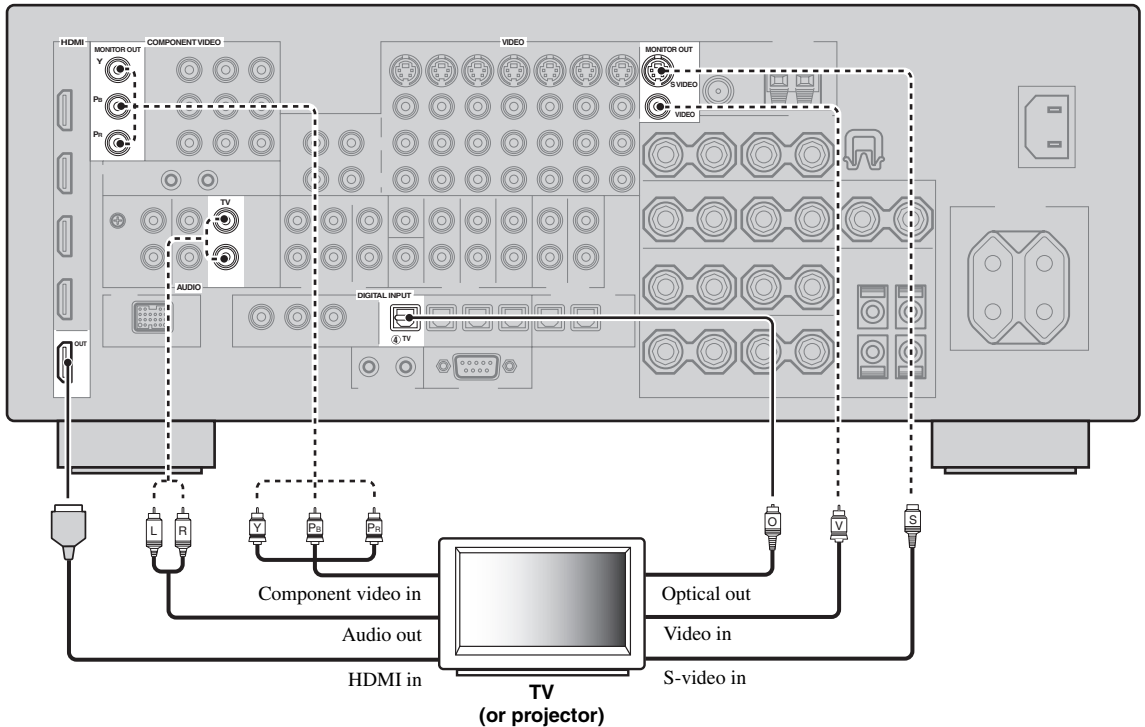
Make sure that this unit and other components are unplugged from the AC wall outlets.



To select the types of the audio signals output at the HDMI OUT jack, configure the “HDMI AUDIO” setting (page 72).

### Note

If you turn off the video monitor connected to the HDMI OUT jack via a DVI connection, the connection may fail. In this case, the HDMI indicator flashes irregularly.



————— Recommended connections

----- Alternative connections

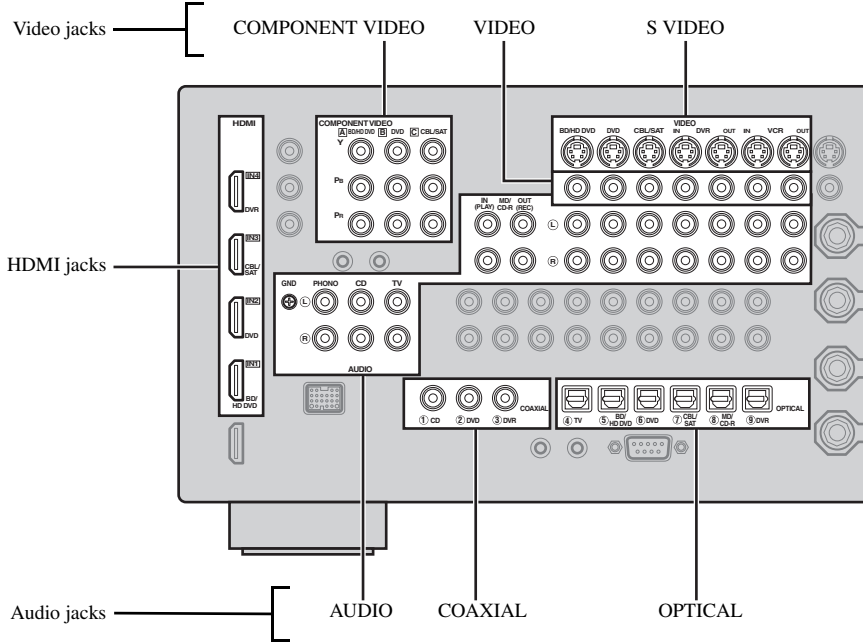
## Connecting other components

### ■ Connecting audio and video components

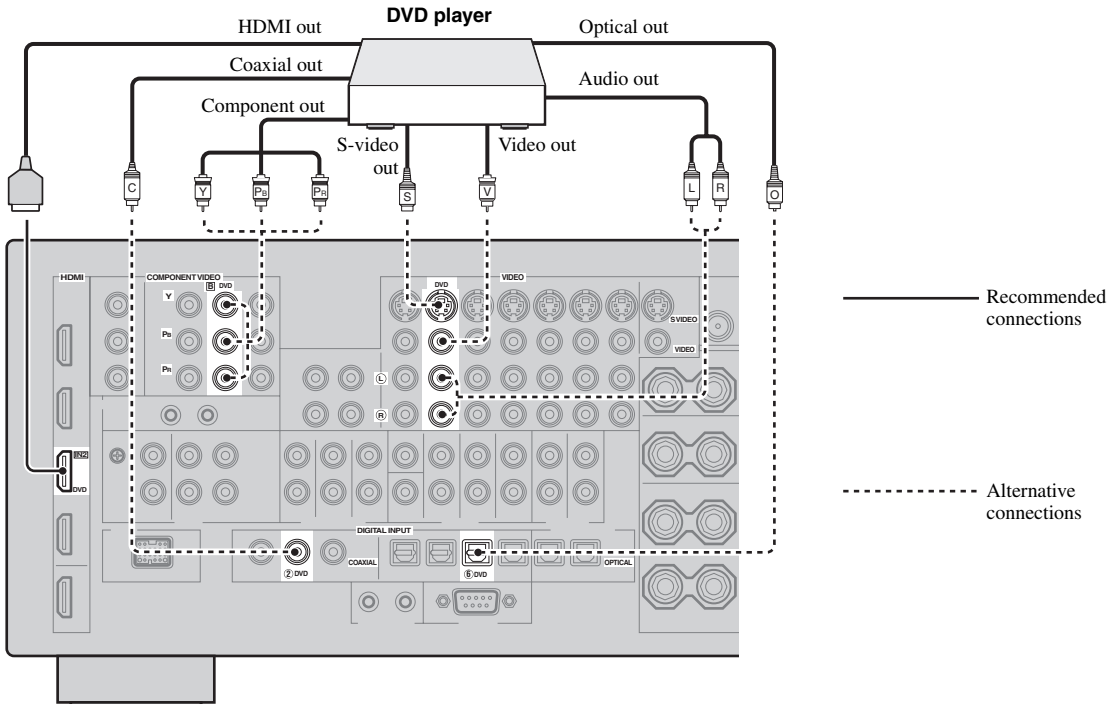
This unit has three types of audio jacks, three types of video jacks and HDMI jacks. You can choose the connection method depending on the component to be connected.



HDMI can transmit both digital audio and video over a single HDMI cable.



### Connection example (connecting a DVD player)



### Jacks used for audio and video connections

Recommended connections are indicated by boldface. When connecting a recording component, you need to make additional connections for recording (signal transmission from this unit to the recording component).



Make sure that this unit and other components are unplugged from the AC wall outlets.



You can also use the VIDEO AUX jacks (page 23) on the front panel to connect an additional component.

Component	Signal type	Jacks to connect	
		On component	On this unit
<b>Blu-ray Disc or HD DVD player</b>	Audio/Video	<b>HDMI out</b>	<b>HDMI IN1 (BD/HD DVD)</b>
	Audio	Optical out	OPTICAL (BD/HD DVD)
		Audio out (analog)	AUDIO (BD/HD DVD)
	Video	Component out	COMPONENT VIDEO (BD/HD DVD)
		S-video out	S VIDEO (BD/HD DVD)
		Video out (composite)	VIDEO (BD/HD DVD)
<b>DVD player</b>	Audio/Video	<b>HDMI out</b>	<b>HDMI IN2 (DVD)</b>
	Audio	Optical out	OPTICAL (DVD)
		Coaxial out	COAXIAL (DVD)
		Audio out (analog)	AUDIO (DVD)
	Video	Component out	COMPONENT VIDEO (DVD)
		S-video out	S VIDEO (DVD)
Video out (composite)		VIDEO (DVD)	
<b>Set-top box</b>	Audio/Video	<b>HDMI out</b>	<b>HDMI IN3 (CBL/SAT)</b>
	Audio	Optical out	OPTICAL (CBL/SAT)
		Audio out (analog)	AUDIO (CBL/SAT)
		Video	Component out
	S-video out	S VIDEO (CBL/SAT)	
		Video out (composite)	VIDEO (CBL/SAT)
<b>DVD recorder</b>	Audio/Video	<b>HDMI out</b>	<b>HDMI IN4 (DVR)</b>
	Audio	Coaxial out	COAXIAL (DVR)
		Audio out (analog)	AUDIO (DVR IN)
		Video	S-video out
	Video out (composite)		VIDEO (DVR IN)
	Audio recording	<b>Optical in</b>	<b>OPTICAL (DVR)</b>
		Audio in (analog)	AUDIO (DVR OUT)
	Video recording	<b>S-video in</b>	<b>S VIDEO (DVR OUT)</b>
		Video in (composite)	VIDEO (DVR OUT)



Component	Signal type	Jacks to connect	
		On component	On this unit
VCR	Audio	<b>Audio out (analog)</b>	<b>AUDIO (VCR IN)</b>
	Video	<b>S-video out</b>	<b>S VIDEO (VCR IN)</b>
		Video out (composite)	VIDEO (VCR IN)
	Audio recording	<b>Audio in (analog)</b>	<b>AUDIO (VCR OUT)</b>
	Video recording	<b>S-video in</b>	<b>S VIDEO (VCR OUT)</b>
Video in (composite)		VIDEO (VCR OUT)	
CD player	Audio	<b>Coaxial out</b>	<b>COAXIAL (CD)</b>
		Audio out (analog)	AUDIO (CD)
MD or CD recorder	Audio	<b>Audio out (analog)</b>	<b>AUDIO (MD/CD-R IN)</b>
	Audio recording	<b>Optical in</b>	<b>OPTICAL (MD/CD-R)</b>
		Audio in (analog)	AUDIO (MD/CD-R OUT)
Turntable	Audio	<b>Audio out (analog)</b>	<b>AUDIO (PHONO)</b>

### Notes

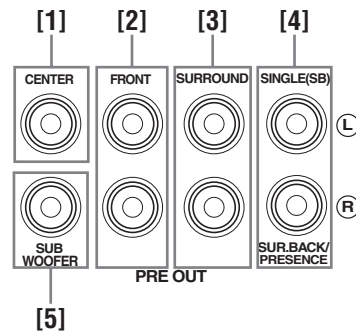
- Be sure to make the same type of video connections as those made for your TV if the video conversion is disabled. For example, if you connected your TV to the VIDEO MONITOR OUT jack of this unit, connect other components to the VIDEO jacks.
- Check the copyright laws in your country to record from CDs, radio, etc. Recording of copyrighted material may infringe copyright laws.
- If you connect your DVD player to both the OPTICAL and COAXIAL jacks, priority is given to the signals input at the COAXIAL jack.
- OSD signals are not output at the DVR OUT and VCR OUT jacks and cannot be recorded.
- To make a digital connection to a component other than the default one assigned to each DIGITAL INPUT or DIGITAL OUTPUT jack, configure the "I/O ASSIGNMENT" setting (page 74).
- When connecting a turntable with a low-output MC cartridge to the PHONO jack, use an in-line boosting transformer or MC-head amplifier.
- Connect your turntable to the GND terminal of this unit to reduce noise in the signal.

### ■ Connecting an external amplifier

This unit has more than enough power for any home use. However, if you want to add more power to the speaker output or if you want to use another amplifier, connect an external amplifier to the PRE OUT jacks. Each PRE OUT jack outputs the same channel signals as the corresponding SPEAKERS terminals.

### Notes

- When you make connections to the PRE OUT jacks, do not make any connections to the SPEAKERS terminals.
- Adjust the volume level of the subwoofer with the control on the subwoofer.



#### [1] CENTER PRE OUT jack

Center channel output jack.

#### [2] FRONT PRE OUT jacks

Front channel output jacks.

#### [3] SURROUND PRE OUT jacks

Surround channel output jacks.

**[4] SUR.BACK/PRESENCE PRE OUT jacks**

Surround back or presence channel output jacks. When you only connect one external amplifier for the surround back channel, connect it to the SINGLE (SB) jack.



- To output surround back channel signals at these jacks, set “PRESENCE SP” to “NONE” and “SUR.B L/R SP” to any parameter except “NONE” (page 68).
- To output presence channel signals at these jacks, set “PRESENCE SP” to “YES” and “SUR.B L/R SP” to “NONE” (page 68).

**[5] SUBWOOFER PRE OUT jack**

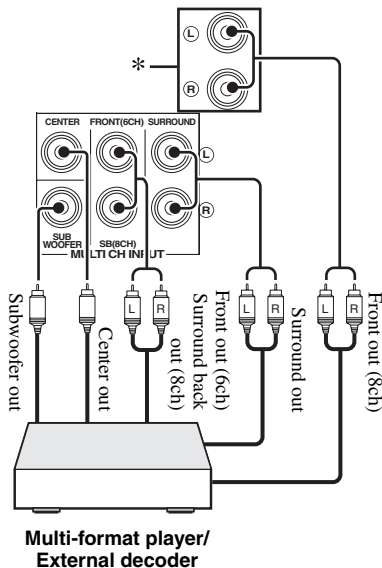
Connect a subwoofer with a built-in amplifier.

**■ Connecting a multi-format player or an external decoder**

This unit is equipped with 6 additional input jacks (FRONT L/R, CENTER, SURROUND L/R and SUBWOOFER) for discrete multi-channel input from a multi-format player, external decoder, etc. If you set “INPUT CH” to “8ch” (page 75), the analog audio input jacks assigned as “FRONT” can be used as the front channel input jacks.

**Notes**

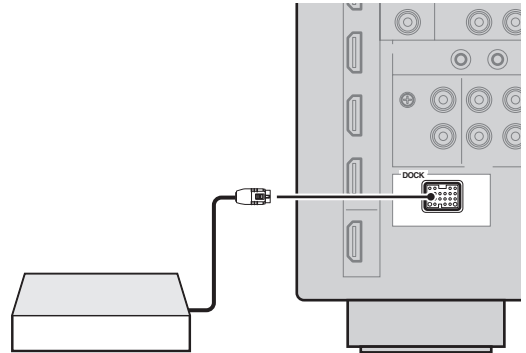
- When you select “MULTI CH” as the input source, the digital sound field processor is automatically disabled.
- Since this unit does not redirect signals input at the MULTI CH INPUT jacks to accommodate for missing speakers, connect at least a 5.1-channel speaker system when using this feature.



\* The analog audio input jacks assigned as “FRONT” in “MULTI CH” (page 75).

**■ Connecting a Yamaha iPod universal dock or Bluetooth wireless audio receiver**

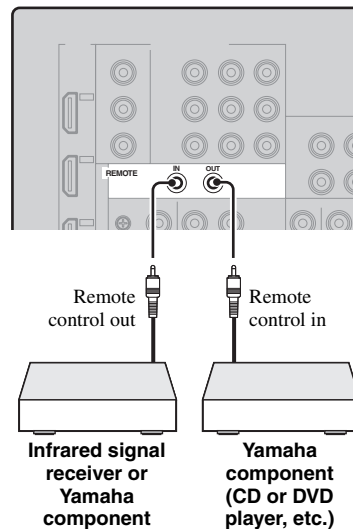
This unit is equipped with the DOCK terminal on the rear panel that allows you to connect a Yamaha iPod universal dock (such as YDS-11, sold separately) or Bluetooth wireless audio receiver (such as YBA-10, sold separately). Connect a Yamaha iPod universal dock or Bluetooth receiver to the DOCK terminal on the rear panel of this unit using its dedicated cable.



Yamaha iPod universal dock or Bluetooth wireless audio receiver

**■ Using REMOTE IN/OUT jacks**

When the components are the Yamaha products and have the capability of the transmission of the remote control signals, connect the REMOTE IN and REMOTE OUT jack to the remote control input and output jack with the monaural analog mini cable as follows.

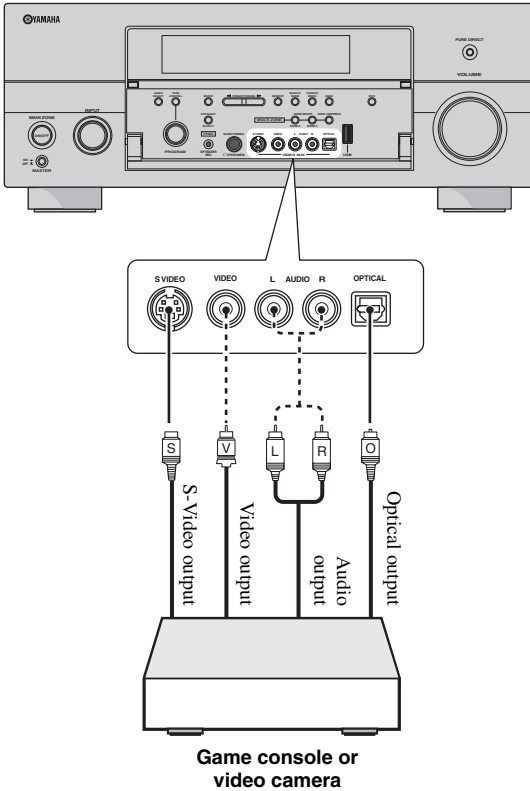


## Using the VIDEO AUX jacks on the front panel

Use the VIDEO AUX jacks on the front panel to connect a game console or a video camera to this unit. To reproduce the source signals input at these jacks, select “V-AUX” as the input source.

### Caution

Be sure to turn down the volume of this unit and other components before making connections.

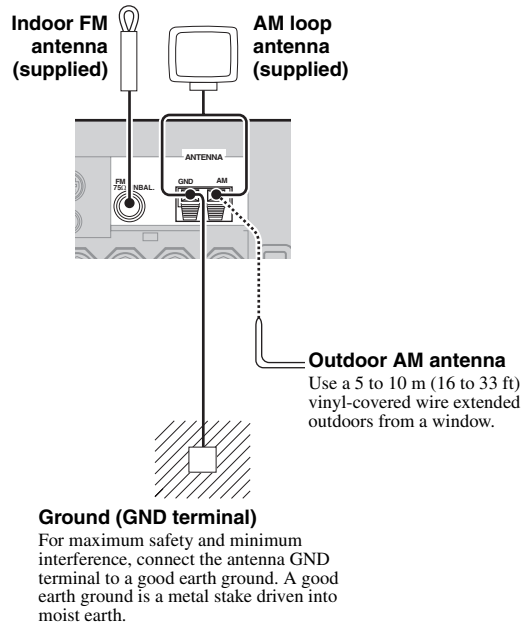


## Connecting the FM and AM antennas

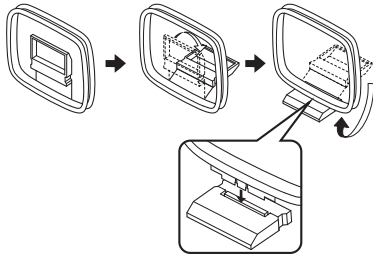
Both FM and AM indoor antennas are supplied with this unit. In general, these antennas should provide sufficient signal strength.

### Notes

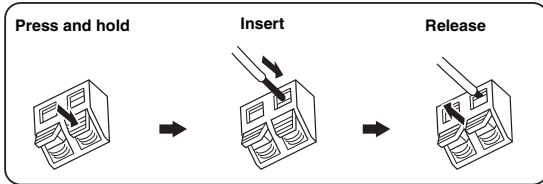
- The types of the supplied antennas and the FM antenna terminal of this unit are different depending on the models.
- (Asia and General models only) Be sure to set the tuner frequency step according to the frequency spacing in your area (page 95).
- The AM loop antenna should be placed away from this unit.
- The AM loop antenna should always be connected, even if an outdoor AM antenna is connected to this unit.
- If you experience poor reception quality, install an outdoor antenna. Consult the nearest authorized Yamaha dealer or service center about outdoor antennas.




**Assembling the supplied AM loop antenna**



**Connecting the wire of the AM loop antenna**

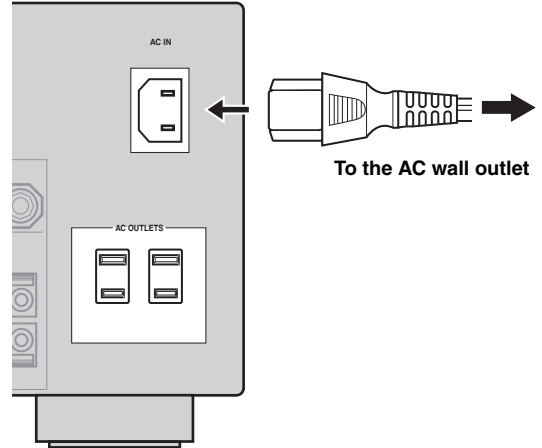


 The wire of the AM loop antenna does not have any polarity and you can connect either end of the wire to AM or GND terminal.

**Connecting the power cable**

■ **Connecting the AC power cable**

Plug the supplied AC power cable into the AC inlet after all other connections are complete, then plug the AC power cable into an AC wall outlet.



**Note**

(Asia model only) Select one of the supplied power cables suitable for the type of AC wall outlet in your location before plugging this unit into the AC wall outlet.

■ **AC OUTLET(S) (SWITCHED)**

U.K. and Australia models..... 1 outlet  
 Korea model..... None  
 Other models..... 2 outlets

Use these outlet(s) to supply power to any connected components. Connect the power cable of your other components to these outlet(s). Power to these outlet(s) is supplied when this unit is turned on. However, power to these outlet(s) is cut off when this unit is turned off. For information on the maximum power or the total power consumption of the components that can be connected to these outlet(s), see “Specifications” (page 113).

**Memory back-up**

The memory back-up circuit prevents the stored data from being lost even if this unit is in the standby mode. However, the stored data will be lost in case the power cable is disconnected from the AC wall outlet or if the power supply is cut off for more than one week.

## Setting the speaker impedance

### Caution

If you are to use 6 ohm speakers, set "SPEAKER IMP." to "6Ω MIN" as follows BEFORE using this unit. You can also use 4 ohm speakers as the front speakers (page 94).

- 1 **Make sure this unit is turned off.**
- 2 **Press and hold **Ⓢ**STRAIGHT on the front panel and then press **Ⓜ**MASTER ON/OFF inward to the ON position.**  
This unit turns on, and the advanced setup menu appears in the front panel display.
- 3 **Rotate the **Ⓝ**PROGRAM selector to select "SPEAKER IMP."**
- 4 **Press **Ⓢ**STRAIGHT repeatedly to select "6Ω MIN".**
- 5 **Press **Ⓜ**MASTER ON/OFF to release it outward to the OFF position to save the new setting and turn off this unit.**



### Note

The setting you made is reflected next time you turn on this unit.

## Turning this unit on and off

### ■ Turning on this unit

Press **Ⓜ**MASTER ON/OFF on the front panel inward to the ON position.

When you turn on this unit by pressing **Ⓜ**MASTER ON/OFF, the main zone is turned on.

### ■ Turning off this unit

Press **Ⓜ**MASTER ON/OFF on the front panel again to release it outward to the OFF position.

### ■ Set the main zone to the standby mode

Press **Ⓜ**MAIN ZONE ON/OFF (or **Ⓢ**STANDBY).

### ■ Turning on the main zone from the standby mode

Press **Ⓜ**MAIN ZONE ON/OFF (or **Ⓟ**POWER).

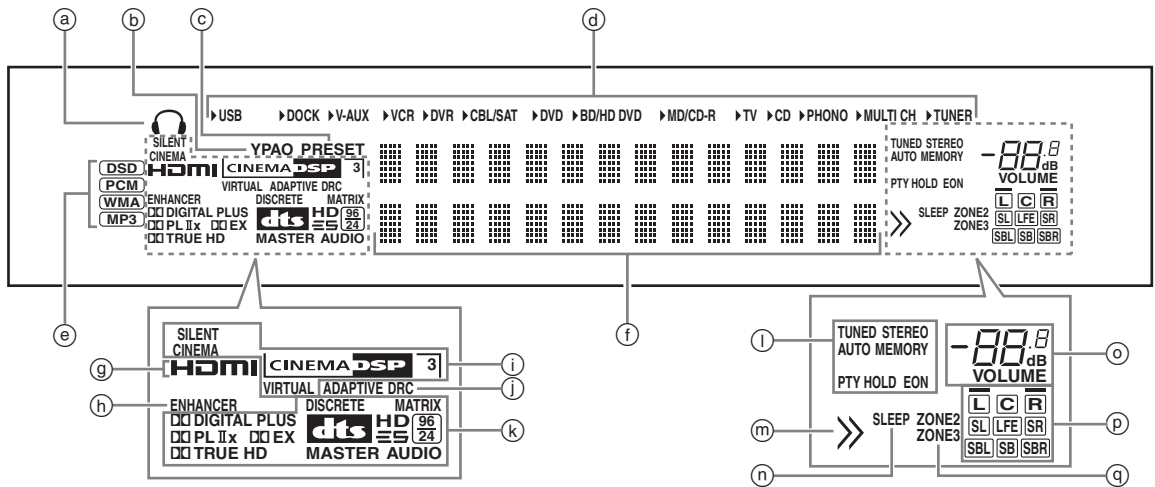


- Basically, we recommend that you use the standby mode to turn off this unit. In the standby mode, this unit consumes a small amount of power in order to receive infrared signals from the remote control.
- **Ⓜ**MAIN ZONE ON/OFF, **Ⓢ**STANDBY and **Ⓟ**POWER are operational only when **Ⓜ**MASTER ON/OFF is pressed inward to the ON position.
- When you turn on this unit, there will be a delay for a few seconds before this unit can reproduce sound.

### If there are some problems...

- First, turn off and then turn on this unit again.
- If problems persist, initialize the parameters of this unit (page 106).

## Front panel display



**a Headphones indicator**

Lights up when headphones are connected (page 35).

**b YPAO indicator**

Lights up when you run “AUTO SETUP” and when the speaker settings set in “AUTO SETUP” are used without any modifications (page 29).

**c PRESET indicator**

Lights up while this unit is in the preset tuning mode.

**d Input source indicators**

The corresponding cursor lights up to show the currently selected input source.

**e Input signal indicators**

Lights up when this unit is reproducing DSD (Direct Stream Digital), PCM (Pulse Code Modulation), WMA (Windows Media Audio), or MP3 (MPEG-1 Audio Layer-3) audio signals.

**f Multi-information display**

Shows the name of the current sound field program and other information when adjusting or changing settings.

**g HDMI indicator**

Lights up when the signal of the selected input source is input at one of the HDMI input jacks (page 16).

**h ENHANCER indicator**

Lights up when the Compressed Music Enhancer mode is turned on (page 43).

**i DSP indicators**

The respective indicator lights up when any of the sound field programs are selected.

**SILENT CINEMA indicator**

Lights up when headphones are connected and a sound field program is selected (page 43).

**CINEMA DSP indicator**

Lights up when you select a CINEMA DSP sound field program (page 38).

**3D indicator**

Lights up when the CINEMA DSP 3D mode is turned on (page 44).

**VIRTUAL indicator**

Lights up when Virtual CINEMA DSP is active (see page 43).

**j ADAPTIVE DRC indicator**

Lights up when the adaptive dynamic range control feature is turned on (page 69).

**k Decoder indicators**

The respective indicator lights up when any of the decoders of this unit function.

**l Tuner indicators**

Light up when this unit is in the FM or AM tuning mode.

**m Menu browsing indicator**

Lights up if any items exist under the current item during menu browsing for iPod and USB.

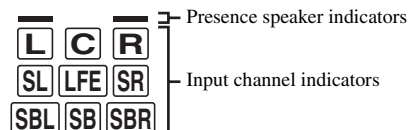
**n SLEEP indicator**

Lights up while the sleep timer is on (page 37).

**o VOLUME level indicator**

- Indicates the current volume level.
- Flashes while the mute function is on (page 36).

**p Input channel and speaker indicators**



### Input channel indicators

- Indicate the channel components of the current digital input signal.
- Light up or flash according to the settings of the speakers when this unit is in the automatic setup procedure (page 29).

### Presence speaker indicators

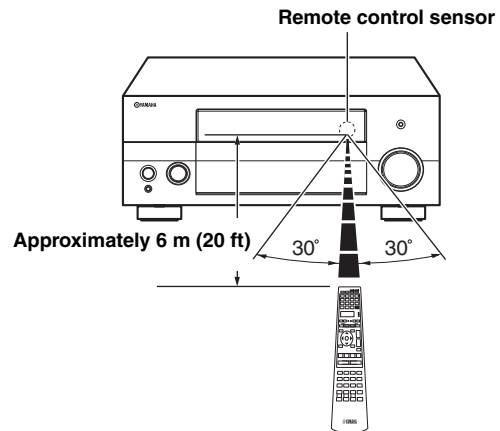
Light up according to setting for "PRESENCE SP" (page 68) in "CONFIG" when this unit is in the auto setup procedure (page 29) or the speaker level setting procedure in the "LEVEL" (page 68).

### ④ ZONE2/ZONE3 indicators

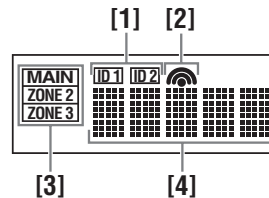
Lights up when Zone 2 or Zone 3 is turned on (page 92).

## Using the remote control

The remote control transmits a directional infrared ray. Be sure to aim the remote control directly at the remote control sensor on this unit during operation.



### Display window (④)



#### [1] ID1/ID2 indicator

Indicates the currently selected remote control ID (page 94).

#### [2] Transmit indicator

Appears while the remote control is sending infrared signals.

#### [3] Zone indicators

Indicates the currently controlling zone (page 92).

#### [4] Information display

Shows the name of the selected input source that you can control.

### Infrared window (①)

Outputs infrared control signals. Aim this window at the component you want to operate.

### **Operation mode selector (Ⓜ)**

The function of some buttons depends on the operation mode selector position.

#### **AMP**

Operates the amplifier function of this unit.

#### **SOURCE**

Operates the component selected with an input selector button (page 82).

#### **TV**

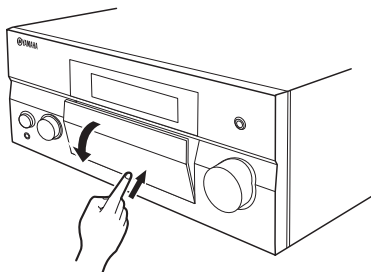
Operates the TV (page 81).

### **Notes**

- Do not spill water or other liquids on the remote control.
- Do not drop the remote control.
- Do not leave or store the remote control in the following conditions:
  - places of high humidity, such as near a bath
  - places of high temperatures, such as near a heater or stove
  - places of extremely low temperatures
  - dusty places
- To set the remote control codes for other components, see page 83.

## ***Opening and closing the front panel door***

When you want to use the controls behind the front panel door, open the door by gently pressing on the lower part of the panel. Keep the door closed when not using these controls.





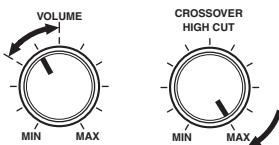
# Optimizing the speaker setting for your listening room

This unit employs the YPAO (Yamaha Parametric room Acoustic Optimizer) technology which lets you avoid troublesome listening-based speaker setup and achieves highly accurate sound adjustments automatically. The supplied optimizer microphone collects and this unit analyzes the sound your speakers produce in your actual listening environment. In addition, the multi-point measurement feature enables you to optimize the setup of this unit for up to eight listening positions.

## Before starting the automatic setup

### 1 Make sure of the following check points before starting the automatic setup operations.

- Speakers are connected appropriately.
- Headphones are disconnected from this unit.
- This unit is turned on.
- The connected subwoofer is turned on and the volume level is set to about half way (or slightly less).
- The crossover frequency controls of the connected subwoofer is set to the maximum.



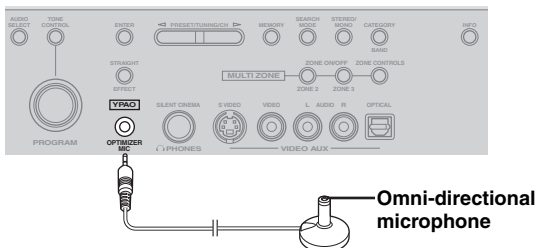
Controls of a subwoofer (example)

- The room is sufficiently quiet.
- Set the operation mode selector on the remote control to **AMP**.

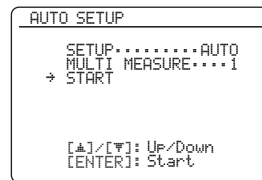
### Notes

- Be advised that it is normal for loud test tones to be output during the automatic setup procedure.
- To achieve the best results, make sure the room is as quiet as possible while the automatic setup procedure is in progress. If there is too much ambient noise, the results may not be satisfactory.

### 2 Connect the supplied optimizer microphone to the OPTIMIZER MIC jack on the front panel.



“MIC ON View OSD MENU” appears in the front panel display and the “AUTO SETUP” screen appears on the video monitor.



You can also run “AUTO SETUP” using the system menu that appears in the OSD or in the front panel display. This manual uses the OSD illustrations to explain the automatic setup procedure.

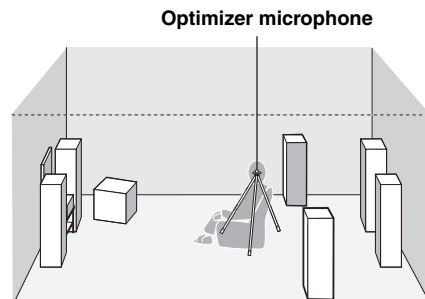
### 3 Start the automatic setup.

To optimize the setup of this unit for one listening position, follow “Basic automatic setup” (page 29). To optimize the setup of this unit for multiple listening positions, follow “Advanced automatic setup” (page 32).

## Basic automatic setup

If you have done all the preparations necessary, follow the procedure below to optimize the setup of this unit for one listening position.

### 1 Place the optimizer microphone at your normal listening position on a flat level surface with the omni-directional microphone heading upward.





It is recommended that you use a tripod (etc.) to affix the optimizer microphone at the same height as your ears would be when you are seated in your listening position. You can use the attached screw of a tripod (etc.) to fix the optimizer microphone to the tripod (etc.).

**2 Check if “START” is selected and then press **ENTER**.**



**Before proceeding next operation**

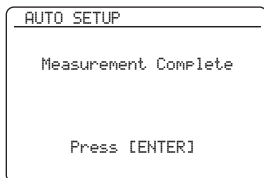
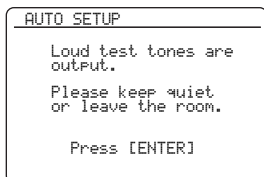
Once you perform the next operation, this unit starts the automatic setup procedure in 10 seconds. For more accurate measurements, we recommended that you get out of the room or move to the wall where speakers are not around during the measurement. It takes approximately 3 minutes.

**3 Press **ENTER** to start the measurement.**

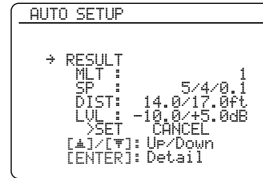
Loud test tones are output from each speaker during the measurement. Once all items are measured, “Measurement Complete” appears.

**Notes**

- During the automatic setup procedure, do not perform any operation on this unit.
- The measurement is canceled if an error occurs (page 31).



**4 Press **ENTER** to display the result.**



**Number of the measured points MLT**

Displays the number of listening positions actually measured.

**Number of speakers SP**

Displays the number of speakers connected to this unit in the following order:  
Front/Back/Subwoofer

**Speaker distance DIST**

Displays the speaker distance from the listening position in the following order:  
Closest speaker distance/Farthest speaker distance

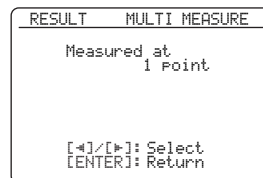
**Speaker level LVL**

Displays the speaker output level in the following order:  
Lowest speaker output level/Highest speaker output level

**Note**

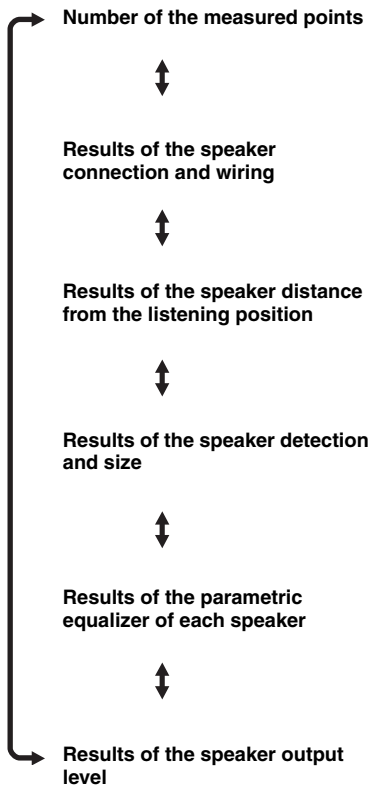
“WARNING” and the number of warning messages appear in the above of “RESULT” if any potential problem occurs (page 32).

**5 Press **ENTER** to display the setup results in detail.**



**6** Press **Ⓢ**◀/▶ repeatedly to toggle between the setup result displays.

Press **Ⓢ**▲/▼ to toggle between the parameters in the result.



- If you are not satisfied with the results or want to manually adjust each parameter, use “MANUAL SETUP” (page 66).
- You can select the parametric equalizer type with “PEQ SELECT” (page 71).

**Notes**

- The distances displayed in the “DISTANCE” results may be longer than the actual distance depending on the characteristics of your subwoofer or external amplifiers if you connect them.
- In the “EQ” results, different values may be set for the same band to provide finer adjustments.

**7** Press **Ⓢ**ENTER to return to the top result display.

```
AUTO SETUP
-----
RESULT
MLT : 1
SP : 5/4/0.1
DIST: 14.0/17.0ft
LVL : -10.0/+5.0dB
-> >SET CANCEL
[▲]/[▼]: Up/Down
[ENTER]: Enter
```

**8** Press **Ⓢ**◀/▶ to select “SET” or “CANCEL” and then press **Ⓢ**ENTER.

```
AUTO SETUP
-----
RESULT
MLT : 1
SP : 5/4/0.1
DIST: 14.0/17.0ft
LVL : -10.0/+5.0dB
-> >SET CANCEL
[▲]/[▼]: Up/Down
[ENTER]: Enter
```

Choices: **SET**, **CANCEL**

- Select “SET” to confirm the “AUTO SETUP” results.
- Select “CANCEL” to cancel the “AUTO SETUP” results.

**9** Disconnect the optimizer microphone or press **Ⓢ**MENU to exit from “SET MENU”.

**Note**

If you change speakers, speaker positions, or the layout of your listening environment, run “AUTO SETUP” again to recalibrate your system.

**■ If an error screen appears**

Press **Ⓢ**◀/▶ to select “RETRY” or “EXIT” and then press **Ⓢ**ENTER

The following screen is an example where “E-9:USER CANCEL” appears in the OSD.

```
ERROR
-----
E-9:USER CANCEL
Don't operate
any function
-> >RETRY EXIT
[▲]/[▼]: Select
[ENTER]: Enter
```

Choices: **RETRY**, **EXIT**

- Select “RETRY” to retry the “AUTO SETUP” procedure.
- Select “EXIT” to exit from the “AUTO SETUP” procedure.



- If “E-5:NOISY” appears, you can also select “PROCEED” to ignore the error and carry on the measurement. However, we recommend that you solve the problem before starting the measurement.
- If “E-10:INTERNAL ERROR” appears, you can select only “EXIT”.
- For details about each error message, see “AUTO SETUP” (page 104).

**■ If “WARNING” appears**

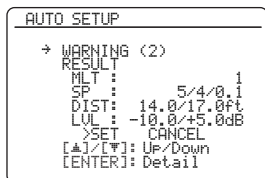
When this unit detects potential problems during the automatic setup procedure, “WARNING” appears in the result screen. Check the warning messages to correct your speaker settings.



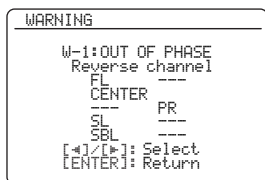
The adjustments are made even if “WARNING” appears, however they may not be optimal.

**1 Make sure the pointer is pointing at “WARNING” and then press **Ⓢ**ENTER to display the detailed information about the warning.**

The number on the right of “WARNING” indicates the number of warning messages.



**2 Press **Ⓢ**</> repeatedly to toggle between the warning displays.**



- For details about each warning message, see “AUTO SETUP” (page 104).
- When the corresponding warning message is not applicable to a speaker, “---” is displayed instead.
- If “SWFR:TOO LOW” or “SWFR:TOO HIGH” appears under “W-3:LEVEL ERROR”, adjust the volume level of the subwoofer.

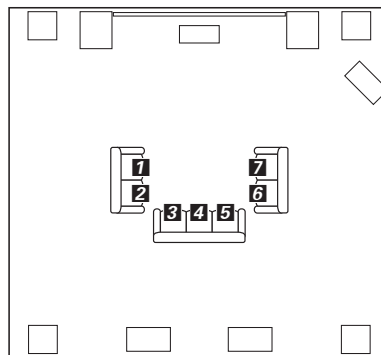
**3 Press **Ⓢ**ENTER to return to the top result display.**

## Advanced automatic setup

If you have done all the preparations necessary, follow the procedure below to optimize the setup of this unit for multiple listening positions.

**1 Place the optimizer microphone at the first listening position.**

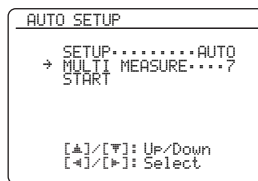
The following illustration shows how to place the optimizer microphone in order to optimize the setup of this unit for seven listening positions for example.



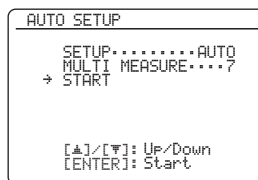
**1/2/3/4/5/6/7:** Listening positions

**2 Press **Ⓢ**Δ / ▽ repeatedly to select “MULTI MEASURE” and then press **Ⓢ**</> repeatedly to set the number of the listening position you want to make the measurement at.**

Choices: 1 (default), 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8



**3 Press **Ⓢ**Δ / ▽ repeatedly to select “START” and then press **Ⓢ**ENTER.**

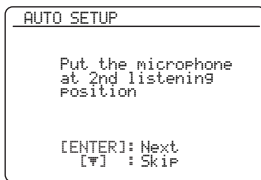


**Before proceeding next operation**

Once you perform the next operation, this unit starts the automatic setup procedure in 10 seconds. For more accurate measurements, we recommended that you get out of the room or move to the wall where speakers are not around during the measurement.

**4 Press  $\textcircled{8}$ ENTER to start the measurement.**

Loud test tones are output from each speaker during the measurement. Once all items for the first listening position are measured, the following message appears.

**Notes**

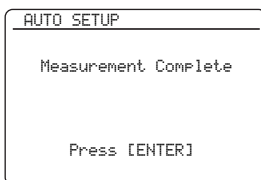
- During the automatic setup procedure, do not perform any operation on this unit.
- The measurement is canceled if an error occurs (page 31).

**5 Move the optimizer microphone to the second listening position and then press  $\textcircled{8}$ ENTER to start the measurement.**

To skip the measurements at the remaining listening positions, press  $\textcircled{8}$ ↵.

**6 Repeat step 5 until the measurement at all listening positions are made.**

If you have made the measurement at all listening positions or skipped the measurement at the remaining listening positions, the following message appears.

**7 Follow steps 4 to 9 in “Basic automatic setup” (page 29) to check the setup result and exit from “SET MENU”.****Reloading the automatic setup parameters**

In case you are not satisfied with the speaker setup and sound adjustments made in “MANUAL SETUP”, you can restore the settings back to the values configured by the last automatic setup.

**Note**

If you reload the automatic setup parameters, the settings you have made in “MANUAL SETUP” are cleared. To save the settings before reloading the automatic setup parameters, see “SYSTEM MEMORY” (page 78).

**1 Set the operation mode selector to  $\textcircled{15}$ AMP and then press  $\textcircled{8}$ MENU.**

The top “SET MENU” screen appears in the OSD.

**2 Press  $\textcircled{8}$ Δ / ▽ repeatedly to select “AUTO SETUP” and then press  $\textcircled{8}$ ENTER.****3 Check if “SETUP” is selected and then press  $\textcircled{8}$ ◀ / ▶ repeatedly to select “RELOAD”.****4 Press  $\textcircled{8}$ Δ / ▽ repeatedly to select “START” and then press  $\textcircled{8}$ ENTER.**

The results of the last automatic setup are displayed.



For details about automatic setup results and how to display the setup results in detail, see “Basic automatic setup” (page 29).

**5 Press  $\textcircled{8}$ Δ / ▽ repeatedly to select “SET” and then press  $\textcircled{8}$ ENTER.**

The automatic setup parameters are reloaded.



To cancel reloading the automatic setup parameters, press  $\textcircled{8}$ ◀ / ▶ repeatedly to select “CANCEL” and then press  $\textcircled{8}$ ENTER.

# Playback

## Caution

Extreme caution should be exercised when you play back CDs encoded in DTS. If you play back a CD encoded in DTS on a DTS-incompatible CD player, you will only hear some unwanted noise that may damage your speakers. Check whether your CD player supports CDs encoded in DTS. Also, check the sound output level of your CD player before you play back a CD encoded in DTS.



To play DTS-encoded CDs when using a digital audio connection, set "DECODER MODE" in "INPUT MENU" to "DTS" before the playback (page 74).

Before performing the following operations, set the operation mode selector on the remote control to **AMP**.

## Basic procedure

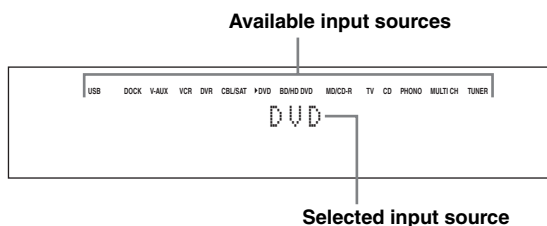
### 1 Turn on the video monitor connected to this unit.



You can configure the display settings with "VIDEO MENU" (page 72) and "DISPLAY SET" (page 75).

### 2 Rotate the **INPUT** selector (or press one of the input selector buttons (3))

The name of the selected input source appears for a few seconds.



### 3 Start playback on the selected source component or select a broadcast station.

- Refer to the instruction manuals for the source component.
- FM/AM radio tuning (page 46)
- iPod playback (page 52)
- Bluetooth component playback (page 54)
- USB playback (page 54)

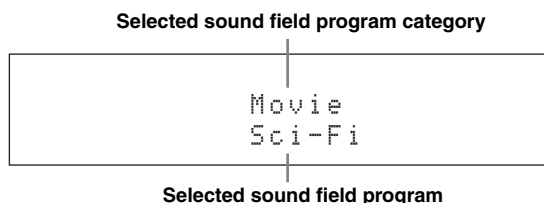
### 4 Rotate **VOLUME** (or press **VOLUME +/-**) to adjust the volume to the desired output level.



To adjust the level of each speaker, see page 45.

### 5 Rotate the **PROGRAM** selector (or press one of the sound field program selector buttons (2)) repeatedly) to select the desired sound field program.

For details about sound field program, see page 38.

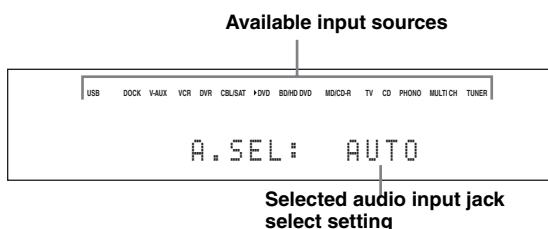


To switch the information (current input source, current sound field program, etc) displayed in the front panel display, press **INFO** (or set the operation mode selector to **AMP** and press **INFO**) repeatedly.

## Selecting audio input jacks (AUDIO SELECT)

Use this feature (audio input jack select) to switch the input jack assigned to an input source when more than one jacks are assigned to an input source.

- 1 Rotate the **ⒸINPUT** selector (or press one of the input selector buttons (Ⓒ)) to select the desired input source.
- 2 Press **ⒹAUDIO SELECT** (or set the operation mode to **ⒺAMP** and then press **ⒺAUDIO SEL**) repeatedly to select the desired audio input jack select setting.



AUTO	Automatically selects input signals in the following order: (1) HDMI (2) Digital signals (3) Analog signals
HDMI	Selects only HDMI signals. When HDMI signals are not input, no sound is output.
COAX/OPT	Automatically selects input signals in the following order: (1) Digital signals input at the COAXIAL jack. (2) Digital signals input at the OPTICAL jack. When no signals are input, no sound is output.
ANALOG	Selects only analog signals. If no analog signals are input, no sound is output.

You can configure the default audio input jack select setting with "AUDIO SELECT" (page 76).

### Note

This feature is not available if no digital input jack is assigned to the selected input source in "I/O ASSIGNMENT" (page 74). "HDMI" is available only when an HDMI input jack is assigned.

## Selecting the multi-channel input component

Use this feature to select the component connected to the MULTI CH INPUT jacks (page 22) as the input source.

Rotate the **ⒸINPUT** selector on the front panel to select "MULTI CH" (or press **ⒸMULTI**).

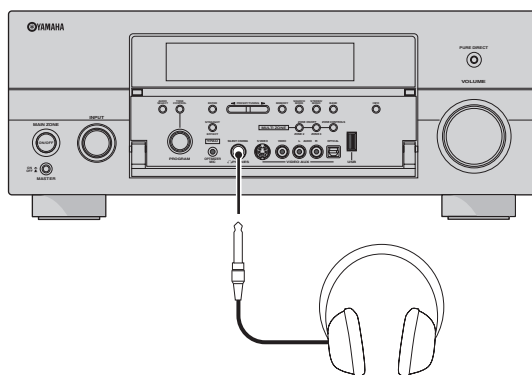
You can configure the multi channel input settings with "MULTI CH" (page 73).

### Note

Sound field programs cannot be selected when "MULTI CH" is selected as the input source.

## Using your headphones

Connect a pair of headphones with a stereo analog audio cable plug to the PHONES jack on the front panel.



When you select a sound field program, SILENT CINEMA mode activates automatically (page 43).

### Notes

- When you connect headphones, no signals are output at the speaker terminals.
- All digital multi-channel audio signals are mixed down to the left and right headphone channels.
- When "MULTI CH" is selected as the input source, only the signals input at the MULTI CH INPUT FRONT jacks are output.

## Muting the audio output

Press **MUTE** on the remote control to mute the audio output. Press **MUTE** again to resume the audio output.



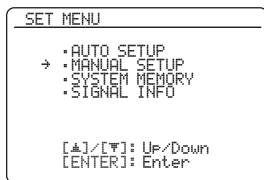
- The VOLUME level indicator flashes while the mute function is on.
- You can configure the muting level with “MUTING TYPE” (page 70).

## Displaying the input source information (SIGNAL INFO)

You can display the format, sampling frequency, channel, bit rate and flag data of the current input signal.

- 1 Set the operation mode selector to **AMP** and then press **MENU** on the remote control.

The top “SET MENU” screen appears in the OSD.



- 2 Press **DOWN** repeatedly to select “SIGNAL INFO” and then press **ENTER**.

- 3 Press **LEFT** / **RIGHT** to toggle between the audio and video information.

- 4 Press **MENU** on the remote control again to exit from “SET MENU”.

## Audio information

FORMAT	Signal format. When this unit cannot detect a digital signal, it automatically switches to analog input.
SAMPLING	The number of samples per second taken from a continuous signal to make a discrete signal.
CHANNEL	The number of source channels in the input signal (front/surround/LFE). For example, a multi-channel soundtrack with 3 front channels, 2 surround channels and LFE, is displayed as “3/2/0.1”.
BITRATE	The number of bits passing a given point per second.
DIALOG	The dialogue normalization level preset to the current input bitstream signal.
FLAG	Flag data encoded in the bitstream, or PCM signals that cue this unit to automatically switch decoders.

### Notes

- “----” appears when this unit cannot display the corresponding information.
- Some high definition audio bitstream contents may not include the discrete surround back left and right channel signals but are encoded at the bitrate of 192 kHz.
- Even if you make settings to output bitstreams directly, some players convert the Dolby TrueHD or Dolby Digital Plus bitstreams to the Dolby Digital bitstreams, while converting the DTS-HD Master Audio or DTS-HD High Resolution Audio bitstreams to the DTS bitstreams.

## Video information

HDMI SIGNAL	Type of the source video signals and the video signals output at the HDMI OUT jack of this unit.
HDMI RES.	Resolution of the input signal (analog or HDMI) and the output signal (HDMI).
ANALOG RES.	Resolution of the source video signals and the analog video signals output at the COMPONENT MONITOR OUT jacks of this unit.
HDMI ERROR (HDMI MESSAGE)	Error message for HDMI sources or connected HDMI devices.

### HDMI error message

Device over	The number of the connected HDMI components is over the limit.
HDCP Error	HDCP authentication failed.
Out of Res.	Out of resolution. The connected monitor is not compatible with the resolution of the input video signal.



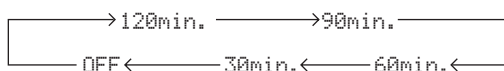
Before performing the following operations, set the operation mode selector on the remote control to **AMP**.

## Using the sleep timer

Use this feature to automatically set the main zone to the standby mode after a certain amount of time. The sleep timer is useful when you are going to sleep while this unit is playing or recording a source. The sleep timer also automatically turns off any external components connected to the AC OUTLET(S) (page 24).

**Press **SLEEP** on the remote control repeatedly to set the amount of time.**

The sleep timer setting changes as shown below.



Once the sleep timer is set, the SLEEP indicator lights up in the front panel display, and the display returns to the selected sound field program.

### To cancel the sleep timer

Press **SLEEP** on the remote control repeatedly to select “SLEEP OFF”.



If you set the main zone to the standby mode, the sleep timer is automatically canceled.

# Sound field programs

This unit is equipped with a variety of precise digital decoders that allow you to enjoy multi-channel playback from almost any stereo or multi-channel sound source. This unit is also equipped with a Yamaha digital sound field processing (DSP) chip containing several sound field programs which you can use to enhance your playback experience.



The Yamaha CINEMA DSP sound field programs are compatible with all Dolby Digital, DTS, Dolby Surround, Dolby TrueHD and DTS-HD Master Audio sources.

## Selecting sound field programs

Rotate the **PROGRAM** selector (or set the operation mode selector to **AMP** and then press one of the sound field selector buttons repeatedly).

The name of the selected sound field program appears in the front panel display and in the OSD.



- You can select the desired sound field program and setting the parameters by using the OSD menu (page 59).
- Available sound field parameters and the created sound field differ depending on the input sources and the settings of this unit.

### Notes

- When you select an input source, this unit automatically selects the last sound field program used with the corresponding input source.
- Sound field programs cannot be selected when the component connected to the MULTI CH INPUT jacks is selected as the input source (page 35) or when this unit is in the Pure Direct mode (page 45).
- When you play back DTS 96/24 sources with any sound field program, this unit applies the selected program without activating the DTS 96/24 decoder.
- Sampling frequencies higher than 48 kHz are sampled down to 48 kHz or lower and then sound field programs are applied.

## Descriptions of the characteristics of the sound field programs

Following indexes indicates the characteristics and trends of each sound field program.

### Note

The characteristics of the sound field programs may differ depending on the settings of the listening room, etc.

### Size of sound field space (Size)



Indicates the size of the sound field to be generated. If the value for this item is small, the sound is that of a small space, while if the value is large, the sound is that of a vast space.

### Vertical/horizontal balance (V/H balance)



Indicates the balance of the vertical (height) and horizontal directions for the sound field to be generated. If this item is more in the horizontal direction, the sound is that of a space with strong reflections from the walls, while if it is more in the vertical direction, the sound is that of a space with strong reflections from the ceiling.

### Front/rear balance (F/R balance)



A CINEMA DSP sound field processing expressing whether the effect is stronger towards the front or rear. When the effect is stronger towards the front, the listener senses a feeling of openness and depth towards the screen, while when the effect is stronger towards the rear, the listener gets a sense of envelopment and movement. Suits basically all types of contents for programs with a good front/rear balance, and is effective when selected appropriately for programs in which the balance is more towards either the front or rear.

### Sound field atmosphere (Atmosphere)



The sound field to be generated is evaluated according to whether it is nearer to one or the other of the following; Simple: Sounds that fade straight-forwardly, with a light, gentle impression, depending on the program. This suits almost all contents relatively well, but provides little brilliance or powerfulness.

Complex: Sounds transform in complex ways as they fade out, with a rich, brilliant impression, depending on the program.

This is extremely effective for the right contents, but is suited for a smaller range of contents.



The sound field to be generated is evaluated according to whether it is nearer to one or the other of the following; Calm: An overall composed, moderate effect, stressing the overall quality of the atmosphere without aiming at any extreme effects. This suits almost all contents relatively well, but provides little showiness or powerfulness.

Powerful: Designed with specific contents in mind (expressing vast spaces, feverish excitement, etc.). This is extremely effective for the right contents, but is suited for a smaller range of contents.

## ■ For audio music sources

☀️ For audio music sources, we also recommend using the Pure Direct mode (page 45), the “STRAIGHT” mode (page 44), or surround decode mode (page 58).

### CLASSICAL 1 CLASSICAL

<p><b>Hall in Munich</b></p> <p>This sound field simulates a concert hall with approximately 2500 seats in Munich, using stylish wood for the interior finishing as normal standards for European concert halls. Fine, beautiful reverberations spread richly, creating a calming atmosphere. The listener's virtual seat is at the center left of the arena.</p>	<p><b>Size</b> Small  Large</p> <p><b>V/H balance</b> Vertical  Horizontal</p> <p><b>Atmosphere</b> Simple  Complex</p>
<p><b>Hall in Vienna</b></p> <p>This is an approximately 1700-seated, middle-sized concert hall with a shoebox shape that is traditional in Vienna. Pillars and ornate carvings create extremely complex reflections from all around the audience, producing a very full, rich sound.</p>	<p><b>Size</b> Small  Large</p> <p><b>V/H balance</b> Vertical  Horizontal</p> <p><b>Atmosphere</b> Simple  Complex</p>

<b>Hall in Amsterdam</b>	<b>Size</b> Small  Large
The large, shoe box shaped hall seats about 2200 around the circle stage. Reflections are rich and pleasing while the sound travels freely.	<b>V/H balance</b> Vertical  Horizontal
	<b>Atmosphere</b> Simple  Complex

<b>Church in Freiburg</b>	<b>Size</b> Small  Large
Located in the south of Germany, this grand, stone-built church has a pointed tower at 120 meters in height. Its long and narrow shape and the high ceiling enable the elongated reverberation time and limited initial reflection time. Thus, the rich reverberation rather than the sound itself reproduces the atmosphere of the church.	<b>V/H balance</b> Vertical  Horizontal
	<b>Atmosphere</b> Simple  Complex

<b>Chamber</b>	<b>Size</b> Small  Large
This program creates a relatively wide space with a high ceiling like an audience hall in a palace. It offers pleasant reverberations that are suitable for courtly music and chamber music.	<b>V/H balance</b> Vertical  Horizontal
	<b>Atmosphere</b> Simple  Complex

LIVE/CLUB  
2

**LIVE/CLUB**

<b>Village Vanguard</b>	<b>Size</b> Small  Large
The Jazz club is on 7th Avenue, New York. This small club with the low ceiling makes the powerful reflections converge toward the stage located in the corner.	<b>V/H balance</b> Vertical  Horizontal
	<b>Atmosphere</b> Simple  Complex

<b>Warehouse Loft</b>	<b>Size</b> Small  Large
The warehouse resembles some lofts in Soho. Sound reflects off the concrete walls clearly with a lot of energy.	<b>V/H balance</b> Vertical  Horizontal
	<b>Atmosphere</b> Simple  Complex

<b>Cellar Club</b>	<b>Size</b> Small  Large
This program simulates a live house with a low ceiling and homey atmosphere. A realistic, live sound field features powerful sound as if the listener is in a row in front of a small stage.	<b>V/H balance</b> Vertical  Horizontal
	<b>Atmosphere</b> Simple  Complex

<b>The Roxy Theatre</b>	<b>Size</b> Small  Large
This is the sound field of a rock music live house in Los Angeles, with approximately 460 seats. The listener's virtual seat is at the center left of the hall.	<b>V/H balance</b> Vertical  Horizontal
	<b>Atmosphere</b> Simple  Complex

<b>The Bottom Line</b>	<b>Size</b> Small  Large
This is the sound field at stage front in The Bottom Line, that was a famous New York jazz club once. The floor can seat 300 people to the left and right in a sound field offering real and vibrant sound.	<b>V/H balance</b> Vertical  Horizontal
	<b>Atmosphere</b> Simple  Complex

■ For various sources

ENTERTAIN  
3 ENTERTAIN

<b>Sports</b>	<b>Size</b> Small  Large
<p>This program allows the listeners to enjoy stereo sport broadcasts and studio variety programs with enriched live feeling. In sports broadcasts, the voices of the commentator and sportscaster are positioned clearly on the center while the atmosphere of the stadium expands in an optimum space to offer the listeners with a feeling of presence in the stadium.</p>	<b>V/H balance</b> Vertical  Horizontal
	<b>F/R balance</b> Front  Rear
	<b>Atmosphere</b> Calm  Powerful

■ For game programs

ENTERTAIN  
3 ENTERTAIN

<b>Action Game</b>	<b>Size</b> Small  Large
<p>This sound field is suitable for action games such as car racing and FPS games. It uses the reflection data that limits the effects range per channel in order to offer a powerful playing environment with a being-there feeling by enhancing various effects tones while maintaining a clear sense of directions.</p>	<b>V/H balance</b> Vertical  Horizontal
	<b>F/R balance</b> Front  Rear
	<b>Atmosphere</b> Calm  Powerful

<b>Roleplaying Game</b>	<b>Size</b> Small  Large
<p>This sound field is suitable for role-playing and adventure games. It combines the sound field effects for movies and the sound field design used with "Action Game" to represent the depth and spatial feeling of the field during play, while offering movie-like surround effects in the movie scenes in the game.</p>	<b>V/H balance</b> Vertical  Horizontal
	<b>F/R balance</b> Front  Rear
	<b>Atmosphere</b> Calm  Powerful

■ For visual sources of music

ENTERTAIN  
3 ENTERTAIN

<b>Music Video</b>	<b>Size</b> Small  Large
<p>This sound field offers an image of a concert hall for live performance of pop, rock and jazz music. The listener can indulge oneself in a hot live space thanks to the presence sound field that emphasizes the vividness of vocals and solo play and the beat of rhythm instruments, and to the surround sound field that reproduces the space of a big live hall.</p>	<b>V/H balance</b> Vertical  Horizontal
	<b>F/R balance</b> Front  Rear
	<b>Atmosphere</b> Calm  Powerful

<b>Recital/Opera</b>	<b>Size</b> Small  Large
<p>This program controls the amount of reverberations at an optimum level and emphasizes the depth and clarity of human voices. "Recital/Opera" offers the reverberations of an orchestra box in front of the listener at the same time as providing the acoustic positioning and feeling of presence on the stage. The surround sound field is relatively moderate, but the data for concert hall effects are used to represent the inherent beauty of music. The listener will not be fatigued even after long hours of opera entertainment.</p>	<b>V/H balance</b> Vertical  Horizontal
	<b>F/R balance</b> Front  Rear
	<b>Atmosphere</b> Calm  Powerful

BASIC OPERATION

English

■ For movie sources



You can select the desired decoder (page 58) used with following sound field program (except “Mono Movie”).

**MOVIE**

<p><b>Standard</b></p> <p>This program create a sound field emphasizing the surrounding feeling without disturbing the original acoustic positioning of multi-channel audio such as Dolby Digital and DTS. It has been designed with the concept of “an ideal movie theater”, in which the audience is surrounded by beautiful reverberations from the left, right and rear.</p>	<p><b>Size</b>                      Small  Large</p> <p><b>V/H balance</b>            Vertical  Horizontal</p> <p><b>F/R balance</b>            Front  Rear</p> <p><b>Atmosphere</b>            Calm  Powerful</p>
<p><b>Spectacle</b></p> <p>This program represents the spectacular feeling of large-scale movie productions. It reproduces a broad theater sound field matching the cinemascope and wider-screen movies with an excellent dynamic range from very small to extremely large sound.</p>	<p><b>Size</b>                      Small  Large</p> <p><b>V/H balance</b>            Vertical  Horizontal</p> <p><b>F/R balance</b>            Front  Rear</p> <p><b>Atmosphere</b>            Calm  Powerful</p>
<p><b>Sci-Fi</b></p> <p>This program clearly reproduces the finely elaborated sound design of the latest science fiction and special effects-featuring movies. You can enjoy a variety of cinematographically created virtual spaces reproduced with clear separation between dialog, sound effects and background music.</p>	<p><b>Size</b>                      Small  Large</p> <p><b>V/H balance</b>            Vertical  Horizontal</p> <p><b>F/R balance</b>            Front  Rear</p> <p><b>Atmosphere</b>            Calm  Powerful</p>
<p><b>Adventure</b></p> <p>This program is ideal for precisely reproducing the sound design of action and adventure movies. The sound field restrains reverberations but puts emphasis on reproducing a powerful space expanded widely to the left and right. The reproduced depth is also restrained relatively to ensure the separation between audio channels and the clarity of the sound.</p>	<p><b>Size</b>                      Small  Large</p> <p><b>V/H balance</b>            Vertical  Horizontal</p> <p><b>F/R balance</b>            Front  Rear</p> <p><b>Atmosphere</b>            Calm  Powerful</p>
<p><b>Drama</b></p> <p>This sound field features stable reverberations that match a wide range of movie genres from serious dramas to musicals and comedies. The reverberations are modest but offer an optimum spatial feeling, reproducing effects tones and background music softly but cubically around clear words and center positioning in a way that does not fatigue the listener even after long hours of viewing.</p>	<p><b>Size</b>                      Small  Large</p> <p><b>V/H balance</b>            Vertical  Horizontal</p> <p><b>F/R balance</b>            Front  Rear</p> <p><b>Atmosphere</b>            Calm  Powerful</p>
<p><b>Mono Movie</b></p> <p>This program is provided for reproducing monaural video sources such as a classic movie in an atmosphere of a good old movie theater. The program produces the optimum expansion and reverberation to the original audio to create a comfortable space with a certain sound depth.</p>	<p><b>Size</b>                      Small  Large</p> <p><b>V/H balance</b>            Vertical  Horizontal</p> <p><b>F/R balance</b>            Front  Rear</p> <p><b>Atmosphere</b>            Calm  Powerful</p>

## ■ Stereo playback

STEREO  
5 **STEREO**

### 2ch Stereo

Use this program to mix down multi-channel sources to 2 channels.

### 7ch Stereo

Use this program to output sound from all speakers. When you play back multi-channel sources, this unit downmixes the source to 2 channels, and then output the sound from all speakers. This program creates a larger sound field and is ideal for background music at parties, etc.

## ■ For compression artifacts (Compressed Music Enhancer mode)

ENHANCER  
6 **ENHANCER**

### Straight Enhancer

Use this program to improve the sound enhancer nearest to the original depth and width of the 2-channel or multi-channel compression artifacts.

### 7ch Enhancer

Use this program to play back compression artifacts in 7-channel stereo.

## ■ Surround decoder mode

SUR. DECODE  
7 **SUR. DECODE**

### Surround Decode

Use this program to play back sources with using the desired surround decoders (page 58).

## ■ Using sound field programs without surround speakers (Virtual CINEMA DSP)

Virtual CINEMA DSP allows you to enjoy the CINEMA DSP sound field programs without surround speakers. It creates virtual speakers to reproduce the natural sound field.

When you set “SUR. L/R SP” to “NONE” (page 68), Virtual CINEMA DSP activates automatically whenever you select a CINEMA DSP sound field program (page 38).

### Note

- Virtual CINEMA DSP does not activate in the following cases:
- “MULTI CH” is selected as the input source (page 35).
  - headphones are connected to the PHONES jack.
  - the unit is in the “7ch Stereo” mode (page 43).

## ■ Enjoying multi-channel sources and sound field programs with headphones (SILENT CINEMA)

SILENT CINEMA allows you to enjoy multi-channel music or movie sound through ordinary headphones. SILENT CINEMA activates automatically whenever you connect headphones to the PHONES jack while listening to CINEMA DSP sound field programs (page 38). When activated, the SILENT CINEMA indicator lights up in the front panel display.

### Note

- SILENT CINEMA does not activate in the following cases:
- “MULTI CH” is selected as the input source (page 35).
  - the unit is in the “2ch Stereo” (page 43), “STRAIGHT” (page 44) or “Pure Direct” (page 45) mode.

Before performing the following operation, set the operation mode selector on the remote control to **AMP**.

### Using CINEMA DSP 3D mode

CINEMA DSP 3D mode creates the intensive and accurate stereoscopic sound field in the listening room. You can activate and deactivate the CINEMA DSP 3D mode.

**Press **3D DSP** repeatedly to turn on or off the CINEMA DSP 3D mode.**

While this unit is in the CINEMA DSP 3D mode, the 3D indicator lights up.

#### Note

CINEMA DSP 3D does not activate (“3D:--” appears) in the following cases:

- the “PRESENCE SP” setting is set to “NONE” (page 68).
- no CINEMA DSP is selected.
- headphones are connected to the PHONES jack.

Before performing the following operation, set the operation mode selector on the remote control to **AMP**.

### Enjoying unprocessed input sources

When this unit is in the “STRAIGHT” mode, 2-channel stereo sources are output from only the front left and right speakers. Multi-channel sources are decoded straight into the appropriate channels without any additional effect processing.

**Press **STRAIGHT** (or **STRAIGHT**) to select “STRAIGHT”.**

The names of the audio signal format of the input source and the active decoder appear in the front panel display.

**To deactivate the “STRAIGHT” mode**

Press **STRAIGHT** (or **STRAIGHT**) again or select another sound field program (page 38).



# Using audio features

Before performing the following operation, set the operation mode selector on the remote control to **AMP**.

Before performing the following operation, set the operation mode selector on the remote control to **AMP**.

## Enjoying pure hi-fi sound

Use the Pure Direct mode to enjoy the pure fidelity sound of the selected source. When the Pure Direct mode is activated, this unit plays back the selected source with the least circuitry.

Press **PURE DIRECT** (or **PURE DIRECT**) to turn on or off the Pure Direct mode.

The **PURE DIRECT** button on the front panel lights up and the front panel display and OSD automatically turns off while this unit is in the Pure Direct mode.

### Notes

- The following operations are not possible when this unit is in the Pure Direct mode:
  - switching the sound field program
  - adjusting the “SET MENU” parameters
  - operating video functions (video conversion, etc.)
- The Pure Direct mode is automatically canceled whenever this unit is turned off.



To make this unit output video signals during the Pure Direct mode, configure the “PURE DIRECT” setting (page 72).

## Adjusting the tonal quality

Use this feature to adjust the balance of bass and treble for the front L/R and center speaker channels and the subwoofer channel.

1 Press **TONE CONTROL** on the front panel repeatedly to select the high-frequency response (TREBLE) or the low-frequency response (BASS).

2 Rotate the **PROGRAM** selector to adjust the high-frequency response (TREBLE) or the low-frequency response (BASS).

Control range: -6.0 dB to +6.0 dB

### Notes

- If you increase or decrease the high-frequency or the low-frequency sound to an extreme level, the tonal quality of the surround speakers may not match that of the front L/R and center speakers and the subwoofer.
- TONE CONTROL is not effective when the Pure Direct mode is activated, or when “MULTI CH” is selected as the input source.

## Adjusting the speaker level

You can adjust the output level of each speaker while listening to a music source. This is also possible when playing sources input at the MULTI CH INPUT jacks.

### Note

This operation will override the level adjustments made in “AUTO SETUP” (page 29) and “LEVEL” (page 68).

1 Press **LEVEL** and then **▲ / ▼** repeatedly to select the speaker you want to adjust.

Display	Adjusted speaker
FRONT L	Front left speaker
CENTER	Center speaker
FRONT R	Front right speaker
SUR. R	Surround right speaker
SB R	Surround back right speaker
SB L	Surround back left speaker
SUR. L	Surround left speaker
SWFR	Subwoofer
PRNS L	Presence left speaker
PRNS R	Presence right speaker



The available speaker channels differ depending on the speaker settings.

2 Press **◀ / ▶** on the remote control to adjust the speaker output level.

Control range: -10.0 dB to +10.0 dB

# FM/AM tuning

## Overview

You can use two tuning modes to tune into the desired FM/AM station:

### Frequency tuning mode

You can search or specify the frequency of the desired FM/AM station automatically or manually (see “FM/AM tuning operations” on this page).

### Preset tuning mode

You can preset the desired FM/AM station in advance, and then recall the station by specifying the preset group and number (see “Recalling a preset station” on page 48).

#### Note

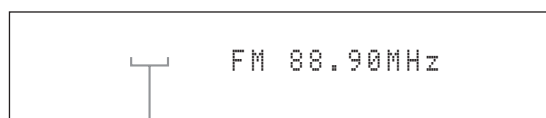
Orient the connected FM and AM antennas for the best reception.

Before performing the following operations, set the operation mode selector on the remote control to **⑤SOURCE** and then press **③TUNER**.

## FM/AM tuning operations

**1** Press **ⓀBAND** (or **⑦BAND**) to select the desired reception band.

**2** If the PRESET indicator in the front panel lights up, press **①SEARCH MODE** (or **⑱SRCH MODE**) to turn it off.



**3** To search the station automatically, press and hold **ⓄPRESET/TUNING/CH** **</>** (or press **ⓄPRESET/CH** **△/▽**) for about 2 seconds. To search the station manually, press **ⓄPRESET/TUNING/CH** **</>** repeatedly.

- To tune into a higher frequency, press **Ⓞ>** (or **Ⓞ△**).
- To tune into a lower frequency, press **Ⓞ<** (or **Ⓞ▽**).

#### Note

If the signal from the station you want to select is weak, search the station manually or enter the frequency directly (page 46).



- When this unit is tuned into a station, the TUNED indicator lights up.
- To switch the information (current input source, current sound field program, etc) displayed in the front panel display, press **ⓁINFO** (or set the operation mode to **⑮AMP** and then press **⑫INFO**) repeatedly.
- To switch between stereo or monaural FM reception, press **ⓄSTEREO/MONO** (or **⑳AUDIO**).

### Direct frequency tuning

Use this feature tune into the desired station directly by entering the frequency.

**1** Follow steps 1 and 2 in “FM/AM tuning operations” (page 46) to select the desired reception band.

**2** Enter the frequency of the desired station by pressing the numeric buttons **⑩**.

Example: To tune into 103.70 MHz



If the entered frequency is out of the range of the FM/AM tuning, “WRONG STATION!” appears in the front panel display.

Before performing the following operations, set the operation mode selector on the remote control to **SOURCE** and then press **TUNER**.

## Preset FM/AM stations

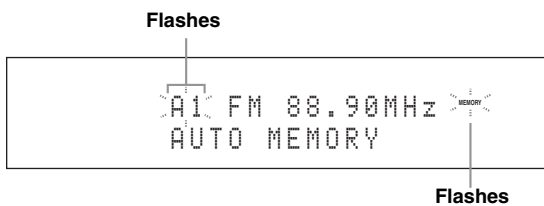
Use this feature to store up to 40 stations FM/AM stations (A1 to E8: 8 preset station numbers in each of the 5 preset station groups). Preset the desired stations to this unit by using the automatic or manual station preset.

### Automatic station preset

You can use the automatic preset tuning feature to store up to 40 FM stations with strong signals in order.

### Press and hold **BAND** (or **BAND**) for more than 3 seconds.

The MEMORY indicator flashes and "AUTO MEMORY" appears in the front panel display. After approximately 5 seconds, automatic presetting starts from the current frequency and proceeds toward higher frequencies.



When automatic preset tuning is completed, the MEMORY indicator disappears.

- To specify the preset group and number from which this unit stores stations, press **PRESET/TUNING/CH**  $\triangleleft/\triangleright$  (or **CAT/A-E**  $\triangleleft/\triangleright$  and **PRESET/CH**  $\triangle/\nabla$ ) repeatedly.
- To cancel the automatic station preset, press **BAND** (or **BAND**) again.

### Notes

- Any stored station data existing under a preset station number is cleared when you store a new station under the same preset station number.
- If the number of received stations does not reach 40 (E8), automatic preset tuning automatically stops after searching for all the available stations.

### Manual station preset

Use this feature to store the FM or AM stations.

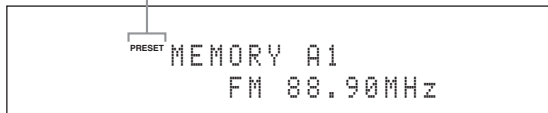
#### 1 Tune into a station.

See page 46 for tuning instructions.

#### 2 Press **MEMORY** (or **MEMORY**).

The PRESET indicator lights up in the front panel and this unit automatically selects an empty preset number.

Lights up

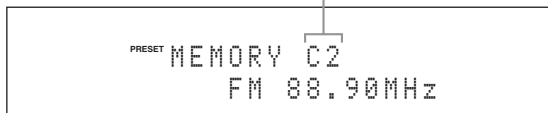


- To store the selected station under an empty preset number automatically, press and hold **MEMORY** (or **MEMORY**) for more than 2 seconds instead of step 2. In this case, the following steps are unnecessary.
- To cancel the manual station preset, press **MEMORY** (or **MEMORY**) again.

#### 3 To select the preset group and number (A1 to E8), press **PRESET/TUNING/CH** $\triangleleft/\triangleright$ (or **CAT/A-E** $\triangleleft/\triangleright$ and **PRESET/CH** $\triangle/\nabla$ ) repeatedly.

- To select a higher preset station group and number, press **▷** (or **△**).
- To select a lower preset station group and number, press **◁** (or **▽**).

Preset station group and number



- You can also select a preset number (1 to 8) by pressing the numeric buttons (①).
- If you select a preset number being used ("\*" appears next to the preset number), the current preset station will be overwritten.

#### 4 Press **ENTER** (or **ENTER**).

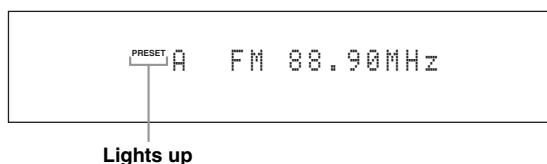
The preset station is set and the PRESET indicator disappears.

### Note

The reception mode (stereo or monaural) is stored along with the station frequency.

## ■ Recalling a preset station

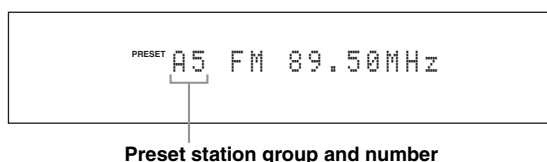
- 1 If the PRESET indicator in the front panel turns off, press **①SEARCH MODE** (or **⑱SRCH MODE**) to turn it on.



### Note

You cannot enter the preset tuning mode if no preset station is set in advance.

- 2 Press **ⓄPRESET/TUNING/CH**  $\triangleleft/\triangleright$  (or **ⓈPRESET/CH**  $\triangle/\nabla$ ) repeatedly to select the desired preset station group and number (A1 to E8).

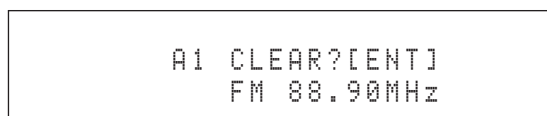


- Empty preset numbers are skipped.
- You can also select a preset station group (A to E) by pressing **ⓈCAT/A-E**  $\triangleleft/\triangleright$  and number (1 to 8) by pressing the numeric buttons (**①**).

## ■ Clearing preset stations

You can clear the assignments of preset stations.

- 1 Select the preset station you want to clear.  
For details, see “Recalling a preset station” (page 48).
- 2 Press and hold **①SEARCH MODE** (or **⑱SRCH MODE**) until “CLEAR?” appears in the front panel display.



- 3 Press **ⓄENTER** (or **ⓈENTER**) to clear the preset station.



To cancel the operation, press **①SEARCH MODE** (or **⑱SRCH MODE**) again.

# Radio Data System tuning (Europe and Russia models only)

Radio Data System is a data transmission system used by FM stations in many countries. This unit can receive various Radio Data System data such as PS (program service), PTY (program type), RT (radio text), CT (clock time), and EON (enhanced other networks) when receiving Radio Data System broadcasting stations.

Before performing the following operations, set the operation mode selector on the remote control to **SOURCE** and then press **TUNER**.

## Selecting the Radio Data System program type (PTY SEEK mode)

Use this feature to select the desired radio program by program type from the all preset Radio Data System broadcasting stations.

**1** Press **BAND** repeatedly to select “FM” as the reception band.

**2** Press **PTY SEEK MODE** to set this unit to the **PTY SEEK mode**.

The name of the program type or “NEWS” flashes in the front panel display.



To cancel the PTY SEEK mode, press **PTY SEEK MODE** on the remote control again.

**3** Press **PRESET/CH**  $\Delta$  /  $\nabla$  to select the desired program type.

The name of the selected program type appears in the front panel display.

Program type	Descriptions
NEWS	News
AFFAIRS	Current affairs
INFO	General information
SPORT	Sports
EDUCATE	Education
DRAMA	Drama
CULTURE	Culture
SCIENCE	Science
VARIED	Light entertainment
POP M	Popular music
ROCK M	Rock music
M.O.R. M	Middle-of-the-road music (easy-listening)
LIGHT M	Light classics
CLASSICS	Serious classics
OTHER M	Other music

**4** Press **PTY SEEK START** or **ENTER** on the remote control to start searching for all the available Radio Data System preset stations.

The PTY HOLD indicator lights up in the front panel display.



To stop searching for stations, press **PTY SEEK START** again.

### Notes

- This unit stops searching for stations when a station broadcasting the selected program type is found.
- If the station found is not the one you desire, press **PTY SEEK START** again to resume searching for another station broadcasting the same program type.

## Using the enhanced other networks (EON) data service

Use this feature to receive the EON (enhanced other networks) data service of the Radio Data System station network. Once you select one of the 4 Radio Data System program types (NEWS, AFFAIRS, INFO, or SPORT), this unit automatically searches for all the available preset stations that are scheduled to broadcast the EON data service of the selected program type for a certain duration of time. When the scheduled EON data service starts, this unit automatically switches to the local station broadcasting the EON data service and then switches back to the national station once the EON data service ends.

### Notes

- You can use this feature only when the EON data service is available.
- The EON indicator lights up in the front panel display only when the EON data service is being received from a Radio Data System station.

### 1 Tune into the desired Radio Data System broadcasting station.

### 2 Make sure the EON indicator is lit in the front panel display.

If the EON indicator is not lit in the front panel display, select another Radio Data System program so that the EON indicator lights up.

### 3 Press **Ⓜ** EON.

"EON" appears in the front panel display.

### 4 Press **Ⓢ** < / > / Δ / ▽ repeatedly to select one of the 4 Radio Data System program types (NEWS, AFFAIRS, INFO or SPORT).

The name of the selected program type appears in the front panel display.

### 5 Press **Ⓢ** ENTER to set the Radio Data System program type.



- To cancel the selected program type, press **Ⓜ** EON again.
- To cancel the EON feature, select "EON OFF" at step 4.

Before performing the following operation, set the operation mode selector on the remote control to **Ⓜ** AMP.

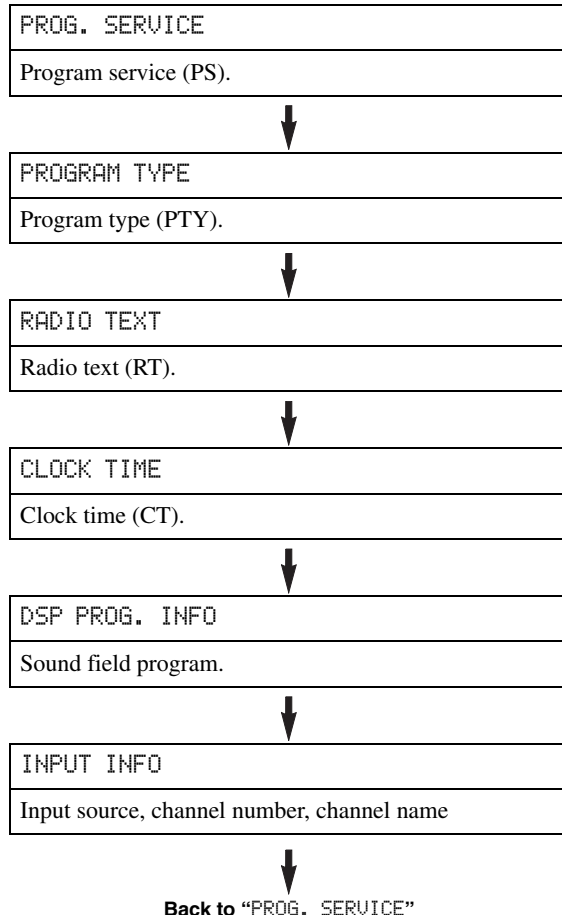
## Displaying the Radio Data System information

Use this feature to display the 4 types of the Radio Data System information: PS (program service), PTY (program type), RT (radio text) and CT (clock time).

### 1 Tune into the desired Radio Data System broadcasting station.

- We recommend using the automatic preset tuning to tune into the Radio Data System broadcasting stations (page 47).
- You can also use PTY SEEK mode to tune into the desired Radio Data System broadcasting station from the preset ones (page 49).

### 2 Press **Ⓛ** INFO (or **Ⓜ** INFO) repeatedly to select the desired Radio Data System display mode.



**Notes**

- If the signals being received are not strong enough, this unit may not be able to utilize the Radio Data System data. In particular, the RT mode requires a large amount of data and may not be available even when the other Radio Data System display modes are available.
- If the signal strength is weakened by external interference while this unit is receiving the Radio Data System data, the reception may be cut off unexpectedly and “-----” appears in the front panel display.
- When the RT mode is selected, this unit can display the program information by a maximum of 64 alphanumeric characters, including the umlaut symbol. Unavailable characters are displayed with the “\_” (underscore).
- If the reception is cut off when the CT mode is selected, “CT WAIT” appears in the front panel display.

# Using iPod™

Once you have stationed your iPod in a Yamaha iPod universal dock (such as YDS-11, sold separately) connected to the DOCK terminal of this unit (page 22), you can enjoy playback of your iPod using the supplied remote control. You can also use the Compressed Music Enhancer mode of this unit to enhance the sound quality of the compression artifacts (such as the MP3 format) stored on your iPod (page 43).

## Notes

- This unit supports iPod touch, iPod (Click Wheel, including iPod classic), iPod nano and iPod mini.
- Some features may not be compatible depending on the model or the software version of your iPod.
- Some features may not be compatible depending on the model of your Yamaha iPod universal dock. The following description is based on using YDS-11.



- Once the connection between your iPod and this unit is complete, “iPod connected” appears in the front panel display.
- For details about status messages displayed in the front panel display and in the OSD, see “iPod” (page 102).
- You can select whether or not this unit charges the battery of the stationed iPod when this unit is in the standby mode by configuring the “STANDBY CHARGE” setting (page 74).

Before performing the following operations, set the operation mode selector on the remote control to **⑤SOURCE** and then press **③DOCK**.

## Controlling iPod™

You can control your iPod when “DOCK” is selected as the input source. The operations of your iPod can be done with the aid of the OSD of this unit (menu browse mode) or without it (simple remote mode).

### Remote control operation

Button	Function
⑧ ENTER	Subsequent menu
△	Menu up
▽	Menu down
◀	Previous menu
▶	Subsequent menu
⑩ ◀◀	Search backward (Press and hold)
▶▶	Search forward (Press and hold)
▶▶	Skip forward
◀◀	Skip backward
□	Stop
⏸	Pause (Menu browse mode) Play/Pause (Simple remote mode)
▶	Play (Menu browse mode) Play/Pause (Simple remote mode)
⑫ DISPLAY	Display

### Controlling iPod in the simple remote mode

You can perform the basic operations of your iPod (play, stop, skip, etc.) using the supplied remote control without the aid of the OSD of this unit.



Operations can be also done with the controls on your iPod.

### Controlling iPod in the menu browse mode

You can perform the advanced operations of your iPod using the supplied remote control with the aid of the OSD of this unit.

You can also browse the songs and videos stored on your iPod in the OSD.

Further, you can change or adjust settings for your iPod to suit your personal preferences.



You can configure the display settings with “DISPLAY SET” (page 75).

## Notes

- Operations cannot be done with the controls on your iPod.
- There are some characters that cannot be displayed in the front panel display or in the OSD of this unit. Those characters are replaced with underscores “\_”.

### 1 Press **⑫DISPLAY** on the remote control.

The following display appears in the OSD.





## 2 Press **Ⓢ** / **△** / **▽** to select “Music”, “Videos” or “Settings” and then press **Ⓢ** / **▶**.

- To browse the music contents stored on your iPod, select “Music”.
- To browse the video contents stored on your iPod, select “Videos”.
- To change the playback settings of your iPod, select “Settings”.

### Note

“Videos” does not appear unless both your iPod and Yamaha iPod universal dock support the video browsing feature.

## 3 Press **Ⓢ** / **△** / **▽** / **◀** / **▶** on the remote control to navigate the iPod menu and then press **Ⓢ** / **ENTER** to begin playback of the selected item.

### Items under “Music”

Playlists (playlists), Artists (artists), Albums (albums), Songs (songs), Genres (genres), Composers (composers)

- Playlists > Songs
- Artists > Albums > Songs
- Albums > Songs
- Songs
- Genres > Artists > Albums > Songs
- Composers > Albums > Songs

### Items under “Videos”

Up to video contents stored on your iPod

### Items under “Settings”

Shuffle, Repeat

### Shuffle Shuffle

Use this feature to set this unit to play songs or albums in random order.

Choices: Off, Songs, Albums

- Select “Off” to deactivate this feature.
- Select “Songs” to set this unit to play songs in random order.
- Select “Albums” to set this unit to play albums in random order.

### Repeat Repeat

Use this feature to set this unit to repeat one song or a sequence of songs.

Choices: Off, One, All

- Select “Off” to deactivate this feature.
- Select “One” to set this unit to repeat one song.
- Select “All” to set this unit to repeat a sequence of songs.



• To toggle between the setting parameters, press **Ⓢ** / **ENTER** repeatedly.

• While the shuffle function is on, “” appears in the OSD.

• While the repeat function is set to “One” or “All”, “” or “” appears in the OSD.

## ■ Function of the play information display



[1] Track number/total tracks

[2] Name of the artist

[3] Name of the album

[4] Name of the song

[5] Progress bar

[6] Elapsed time

[7] Shuffle and repeat icons

[8] **▶** (playback), **■** (pausing), **▶▶** (search forward) or **◀◀** (search backward)

[9] Remaining time

# Using Bluetooth™ components

You can connect a Yamaha Bluetooth receiver (such as YBA-10, sold separately) to the DOCK terminal of this unit and enjoy the music contents stored in your Bluetooth component (such as a portable music player) without wiring between this unit and the Bluetooth component. You need to perform “pairing” the connected Bluetooth wireless audio receiver and your Bluetooth component in advance.

## Note

This unit supports A2DP (Advanced Audio Distribution Profile) Bluetooth profile.

## Pairing the Bluetooth™ receiver and your Bluetooth component

Pairing must be performed when using a Bluetooth component with the Bluetooth receiver connected to this unit for the first time or if the pairing data has been deleted. “Pairing” refers to the operation of registering a Bluetooth component for Bluetooth communications.



- You need the pairing operation only for the first time when you use the Bluetooth component with the Bluetooth receiver.
- Pairing requires operations on this unit and on the other component with which Bluetooth communications are to be established. If necessary, refer to the other component’s operating instructions.

There are two pairing methods: pairing by using “START PAIRING” in “SET MENU” and quick pairing.

### ■ Pairing by using “SET MENU”

Use this feature to perform pairing with the OSD. For details, see “START PAIRING” (page 74).

### ■ Quick pairing

To ensure security, a time limit of 8 minutes is set for the pairing operation. You are recommended to read and fully understand all the instructions before starting.

**1** Rotate the **ⒸINPUT** selector (or set the operation mode selector to **ⒺSOURCE** and then press **ⒹDOCK**) to select “DOCK” as the input source.

**2** Turn on your Bluetooth component and then set the Bluetooth component to the pairing mode.

For details about how to operate the Bluetooth component, refer to the manual for it.

**3** Press and hold **ⒺENTER** (or **ⒹENTER**) until “Searching” appears in the front panel display.

While the Bluetooth receiver is in the pairing mode, DOCK indicator flashes in the front panel display.



To cancel the pairing, press **ⒺENTER** (or **ⒹENTER**) again.

**4** Check that the Bluetooth component detects the Bluetooth receiver.

If the Bluetooth component detects the Bluetooth receiver, “YBA-10 YAMAHA” (example) appears in the Bluetooth device list.

**5** Select the Bluetooth receiver in the Bluetooth device list and then enter the pass key “0000” on the Bluetooth component.

When the pairing procedure is successful, “BT connected” appears in the front panel display.

## Note

The Yamaha Bluetooth receiver can be paired with up to eight Bluetooth components. When pairing is conducted successfully with a ninth component and the pairing data is registered, the pairing data for the least recently used other component is cleared.

## Playback of the Bluetooth™ component

**1** Rotate the **ⒸINPUT** selector (or set the operation mode selector to **ⒺSOURCE** and then press **ⒹDOCK**) to select “DOCK” as the input source.

**2** Start playback of your Bluetooth component.

When the connected Bluetooth receiver detects the Bluetooth component, “BT connected” appears in the front panel display.



- When you press **ⒹENTER** on the remote control, the connected Bluetooth receiver searches and connect to the last connected Bluetooth component. If the Bluetooth receiver cannot find the Bluetooth component, “Not found” appears in the front panel display.
- To disconnect the Bluetooth receiver from the Bluetooth component, press **ⒹENTER**.

# Using USB features

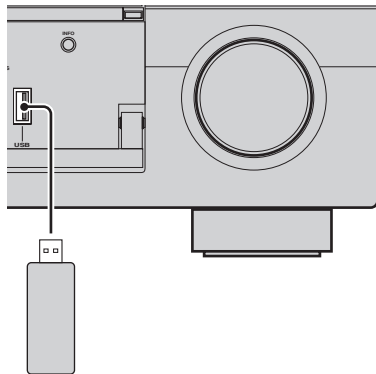
Before performing the following operations, set the operation mode selector on the remote control to **SOURCE** and then press **USB**.

Use this feature to enjoy WAV (PCM format only), MP3 and WMA files saved on your USB memory device or USB portable audio player connected to the USB port on the front panel of this unit.

## Notes

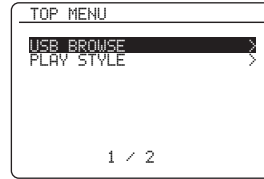
- “Please wait” may appear whenever it takes time for communication. This is not a system malfunction. Wait for a while.
- This unit supports USB mass storage class devices (except USB Hard Disc Drivers) using FAT 16 or FAT 32.
- Only the first partition is displayed in the OSD. You cannot select files in other partitions.
- Up to 8 levels of directory hierarchy and 500 music files per directory are recognized.
- Some devices may not work properly even if they meet the requirements.
- Some WAV, MP3 and WMA files may not be playable or may be noisy when played.

- 1 Connect a USB jack of a USB memory device or USB portable audio player to the USB port on the front panel of this unit.**



USB memory device or USB portable audio player

- 2 Press **DISPLAY** on the remote control.**  
The following display appears in the OSD.



- 3 Press **UP/DOWN** to select the “USB BROWSE” and then press **ENTER**.**

- 4 Press **UP/DOWN/LEFT/RIGHT** to navigate the USB menu and then press **ENTER** to begin playback of the selected item.**

- Press **UP/DOWN** to select the desired menu.
- Press **ENTER** to enter the selected menu.
- Press **LEFT** to return to the previous menu level.



- “>” in the right corner of each menu line indicates that there is a submenu available in the next menu level.
- You can configure the display settings with “DISPLAY SET” (page 75).

## Function of the play information display



- [1] Name of the artist
- [2] Name of the album
- [3] Name of the song
- [4] Elapsed time
- [5] Shuffle and repeat icons
- [6] ► (playback)

## ■ PLAY STYLE (Playback styles)

You can shuffle songs in a random order or repeat one specific song or a sequence of songs.

### 1 Press **Ⓚ** **DISPLAY** on the remote control.



While a song is being played back, the play information display appears. In this case, press **Ⓚ** repeatedly until the top USB menu appears.

### 2 Press **Ⓚ** **▲** / **▼** to select “PLAY STYLE” and then press **Ⓚ** **▶**.

### 3 Press **Ⓚ** **▲** / **▼** to select an item and then press **Ⓚ** **ENTER** repeatedly to toggle between the setting parameters.

#### SHUFFLE (Shuffle)

Use this feature to set this unit to play songs or albums in random order.

- Select “OFF” to deactivate the shuffle function.
- Select “ON” to play songs or albums in random order.

#### REPEAT (Repeat)

Use this feature to set this unit to repeat one song or a sequence of songs.

- Select “OFF” to deactivate the repeat function.
- Select “ONE” to repeat one song.
- Select “ALL” to repeat a sequence of songs.



- While the shuffle function is on, “” appears in the OSD.
- While the repeat function is set to “One” or “All”, “” or “” appears in the OSD.

## ■ Remote control operation

Button	Function
<b>Ⓚ</b> <b>ENTER</b>	Subsequent Menu
<b>▲</b>	Menu Up
<b>▼</b>	Menu Down
<b>◀</b>	Previous menu
<b>▶</b>	Subsequent menu
<b>Ⓚ</b> <b>MEMORY</b>	Memory
<b>Ⓚ</b> <b>▶▶</b>	Skip forward
<b>Ⓚ</b> <b>◀◀</b>	Skip backward
<b>Ⓚ</b> <b>□</b>	Stop
<b>▶</b>	Play
<b>Ⓚ</b> <b>1 - 8</b>	Numeric buttons (1-8) *1
<b>Ⓚ</b> <b>DISPLAY</b>	Display

\*1 Press to assign or recall the preset items (page 56).

Before performing the following operations, set the operation mode selector on the remote control to **Ⓚ** **SOURCE** and then press **Ⓚ** **USB**.

## Using shortcut buttons

Use this feature to access the desired music sources (WAV, MP3 and WMA files on the connected USB storage devices) directly. You can preset 8 music sources in the USB storage.

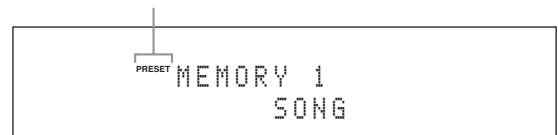
### ■ Assigning the items to the numeric button (1-8) (Ⓚ)

#### 1 Select a desired content you want to assign to a numeric button (1-8) (Ⓚ), and then play back the content.

#### 2 Press **Ⓚ** **MEMORY**.

The PRESET indicator lights up in the front panel and this unit automatically selects an empty preset number.

Lights up



- To store the selected content under an empty preset number automatically, press and hold **Ⓚ** **MEMORY** (or **Ⓚ** **MEMORY**) for more than 2 seconds instead of step 2. In this case, the following steps are unnecessary.
- To cancel the preset, press **Ⓚ** **MEMORY** (or **Ⓚ** **MEMORY**) again.
- When you do not complete each of the following steps within 30 seconds, the memory preset mode is automatically canceled. In this case, start over from step 2.

#### 3 Press a numeric button (1-8) (Ⓚ) that you want to assign.

Preset number



If you select a preset number being used (“\*\*”) appears next to the preset number), the current preset number will be overwritten.

#### 4 Press **Ⓚ** **ENTER**.

The preset content is set and the PRESET indicator disappears.

## ■ Select an item by using numeric buttons (1-8) (Ⓜ)

**Press one of the numeric button (1-8) (Ⓜ) to which the desired item is assigned to select the item as the input source.**

This unit starts the playback of the source assigned to the selected numeric button.

### Notes

- “EMPTY” appears in the front panel display and the short message display when you press the numeric button (1-8) (Ⓜ) to which no items are assigned.
- This unit does not recall the correct item assigned to the selected numeric button (1-8) (Ⓜ) in the following cases:
  - the connected USB device is incorrect.
  - the directory of the selected item has been changed.



- This unit stores the relative position of the preset items in a directory, and does not recall the correct item by using numeric buttons (1-8) (Ⓜ) if you add or delete music files to or from the same directory as the preset items. In such cases, preset the desired item to the numeric buttons (1-8) (Ⓜ) again.
- We recommend that you create eight directories which contain the desired items in a directory beside the directory which contains all music files, and then preset the top item of each directory to the numeric buttons (1-8) (Ⓜ). When you change the items which are preset to the numeric buttons (1-8) (Ⓜ), replace the items in the directory to the desired items without deleting the directory.

# Advanced sound configurations

## Selecting decoders

### ■ Selecting decoders for 2-channel sources (surround decode mode)

Use this feature to play back sources with selected decoders. You can play back 2-channel sources on multi-channels.

Set the operation mode selector to **AMP** and then press **SUR. DECODE** repeatedly on the remote control to select the surround decode mode.

You can select desired surround decoder modes depending on the type of source you are playing and your personal preference.



You can change the decoder parameter settings in the OSD. For details on how to change the parameters, See “Changing sound field parameter settings” on page 59.

### ■ Decoder descriptions

Name of the decoder  
(Decoder Type)

**PLIIX Music**  
**PLII Music**

Dolby Pro Logic IIX (or Dolby Pro Logic II) processing for music sources. The Pro Logic IIX decoder is not available when "SUR.B L/R SP" (page 68) is set to "NONE" or using headphones.

Decoder description

**PRO LOGIC**

Dolby Pro Logic processing for any sources.

**PLIIX Movie**  
**PLII Movie**

Dolby Pro Logic IIX (or Dolby Pro Logic II) processing for movie sources. The Pro Logic IIX decoder is not available when "SUR.B L/R SP" (page 68) is set to "NONE" or using headphones.

**PLIIX Music**  
**PLII Music**

Dolby Pro Logic IIX (or Dolby Pro Logic II) processing for music sources. The Pro Logic IIX decoder is not available when "SUR.B L/R SP" (page 68) is set to "NONE" or using headphones.

**PLIIX Game**  
**PLII Game**

Dolby Pro Logic IIX (or Dolby Pro Logic II) processing for game sources. The Pro Logic IIX decoder is not available when "SUR.B L/R SP" (page 68) is set to "None" or using headphones.

**Neo:6 Cinema**

DTS processing for movie sources.

**Neo:6 Music**

DTS processing for music sources.



When you select the surround decode mode for the multi-channel digital sources, this unit automatically selects the corresponding decoder for each source.

### ■ Selecting decoders used with MOVIE sound field programs

You can select one of the following decoder types for use with the MOVIE sound field programs (except "Mono Movie"). For details about the MOVIE sound field programs, see "For movie sources" (page 42). For details on how to select the decoder type, see "Changing sound field parameter settings" (page 59).

Choices: PLIIX Movie (PLII Movie), Neo:6 Cinema

## ■ Selecting decoders for multi-channel sources

If you connected surround back speakers, use this feature to enjoy 6.1/7.1-channel playback for multi-channel sources using the Dolby Pro Logic IIx, Dolby Digital EX, or DTS-ES decoders.

Set the operation mode selector to **⑮AMP** and then press **⑳EXTD SUR.** on the remote control repeatedly to switch between 5.1 and 6.1/7.1-channel playback.

Choice	Functions
<b>AUTO</b>	Activates the optimum decoder to play back signals in 6.1/7.1 channels when this unit recognizes a signal flag being input.
Decoders (PLIIx Movie, PLIIx Music, EX/ES)	Use this feature to activate the desired decoders for the playback of multi-channel sources manually.
OFF	Does not use any decoders to create 6.1/7.1 channels.



Use this feature to activate the desired decoder manually when this unit cannot detect the signal flag encoded to the input sources correctly.

### Notes

- The available decoders vary depending on the setting of the speakers and the input sources.
- 6.1/7.1-channel playback is not possible in the following cases:
  - when “SUR. L/R SP” (page 67) or “SUR.B L/R SP” (page 68) is set to “NONE”.
  - when the component connected to the MULTI CH INPUT jacks is being played.
  - when the source being played does not contain surround left and right channel signals.
  - when a Dolby Digital KARAOKE source is being played.
  - when this unit is in the stereo playback, 7ch Enhancer (page 43) or Pure Direct (page 45) mode.
  - when “BI-AMP” is set to “ON” (page 95).
- You can set the initial extended decoder mode with "EXTD SUR." (page 77).

## Changing sound field parameter settings

You can enjoy good quality sound with the initial factory settings. Although you do not have to change the initial factory settings, you can change some of the parameters to better suit the input source or your listening room.

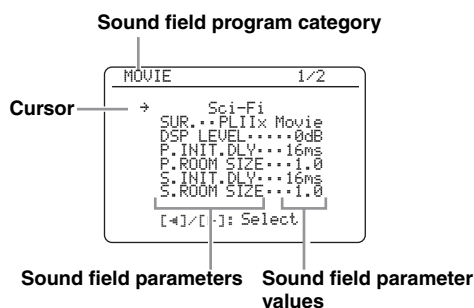
### Note

You cannot change the sound field parameter values when “MEMORY GUARD” in “OPTION MENU” is set to “ON” (page 76).

**1 Turn on the video monitor connected to this unit.**

**2 Set the operation mode selector to **⑮AMP** and then press **⑳PARAMETER** on the remote control.**

The following screen appears in the OSD.



**3 Press **⑧◀/▶** repeatedly to select the desired sound field program you want to adjust.**

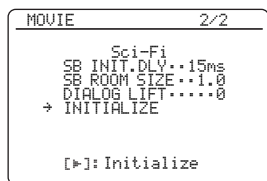
**4 Press **⑧▲/▼** to select the desired sound field parameter and then **⑧◀/▶** to change the selected sound field parameter value.**

For details about each sound field parameter, see page 38.

- To increase the value, press **⑧▶**.
- To decrease the value, press **⑧◀**.



- Repeat steps 3 and 4 as necessary to change other sound field program parameter settings.
- The available parameters for some of the sound field programs may be displayed on more than one page in the OSD. In this case, press **Ⓢ** **Δ** / **∇** to scroll through pages.
- When you set a sound field parameter to a value other than the initial factory settings, an asterisk mark (\*) appears by the parameter name in the OSD.
- If you press and hold **Ⓢ** **</>** to change the value, the value shown in the front panel display will momentarily stop at the initial factory setting.
- To initialize the parameters of the selected sound field program, press **Ⓢ** **Δ** / **∇** repeatedly to select "INITIALIZE" and then press **Ⓢ** **>**. In the confirmation screen, press **Ⓢ** **>** to confirm or **Ⓢ** **<** to cancel the initialization.



**5 Press **Ⓢ** **Ⓢ** **PARAMETER** to turn off the sound field parameter display.**

**Basic configuration of sound field programs**

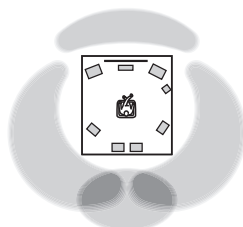
Each sound field program has some parameters defining the characteristics of the program. To customize the selected sound field program, adjust "DSP LEVEL" and/or "DIALOG LIFT" first, and then try other parameters.



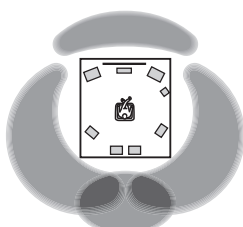
To change sound field parameter settings, see page 59 for details.

**Adjusting the effect sound level of the sound field programs (DSP LEVEL)**

Sound field programs add effect sounds (DSP effect sounds) to the original source sound to create sound field in the listening room. Use the "DSP LEVEL" parameter to adjust the level of the effect sounds.



The DSP effect sound level is low



The DSP effect sound level is high

Adjust "DSP LEVEL" as follows:

**Increase the value of "DSP LEVEL" when**

- the effect sound of the selected sound field program is too weak.
- you cannot recognize any difference between the sound field programs.

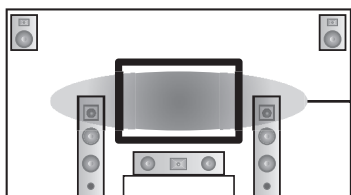
**Decrease the value of "DSP LEVEL" when**

- the sound is vague.
- you feel that the additional sound effect is excessive.

Control range: -6 dB to +3 dB

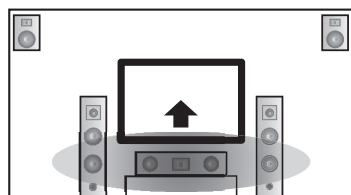
**Adjusting the vertical dialogue position (DIALOG LIFT)**

Use this feature to adjust the vertical position of the dialogues in movies. The ideal position of the dialogues is at the center of the video monitor screen.



The ideal dialogue position

If the dialogues are heard at the lower position of the video monitor screen, increase the value of "DIALOG LIFT".



Move up to the ideal dialogue position

Choices: **0**, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5

"0" (initial setting) is the lowest position, and "5" is the highest position.

**Notes**

- "DIALOG LIFT" is available only when "PRESENCE SP" is set to "YES" (page 68).
- You cannot move the dialogue position down from the initial dialogue position.



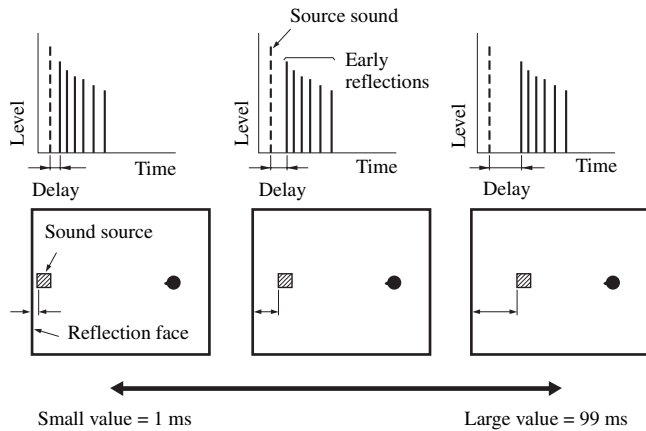
## ■ Sound field parameter descriptions

Use the following sound field parameters to customize the sound field programs in detail.

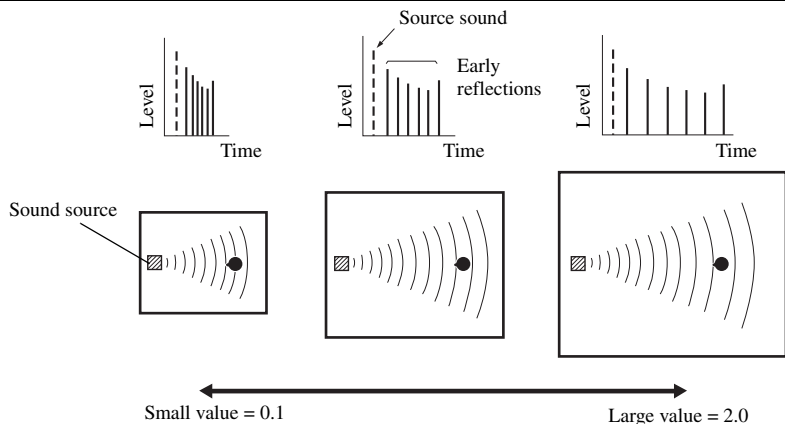


To change sound field parameter settings, see page 59 for details.

Sound field parameter	Features
INIT.DLY P.INIT.DLY S.INIT.DLY SB INIT.DLY	<p>Initial delay. Presence, surround, and surround back sound field initial delay. Changes the apparent size of the sound field by adjusting the delay between the direct sound and the first reflection heard by the listener. The smaller the value, the smaller the sound field seems to the listener.</p> <p> When you adjust the initial delay parameters, we also recommend that you adjust the corresponding room size parameters likewise.</p> <hr/> <p>Control range: 1 to 99 ms (INIT.DLY and P.INIT.DLY) 1 to 49 ms (S.INIT.DLY and SB INIT.DLY)</p>



ROOM SIZE P.ROOM SIZE S.ROOM SIZE SB ROOM SIZE	<p>Room size. Presence, surround, and surround back room size. Adjusts the apparent size of the sound field. The larger the value, the larger the surround sound field becomes. As the sound is repeatedly reflected around a room, the larger the hall is, the longer the time between the original reflected sound and the subsequent reflections. By controlling the time between the reflected sounds, you can change the apparent size of the virtual venue. Changing this parameter from one to two doubles the apparent length of the room.</p> <p> When you adjust the room size parameters, we also recommend that you adjust the corresponding initial delay parameters likewise.</p> <hr/> <p>Control range: 0.1 to 2.0</p>
---	--

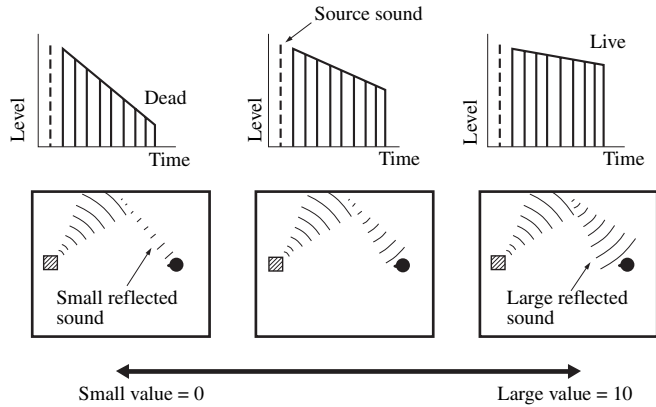


Sound field parameter	Features
-----------------------	----------

LIVENESS  
 S.LIVENESS  
 SB LIVENESS

Liveness. Surround and surround back liveness. Adjusts the reflectivity of the virtual walls in the hall by changing the rate at which the early reflections decay. The early reflections of a sound source decay much faster in a room with acoustically absorbent wall surfaces than in one which has highly reflective surfaces. A room with acoustically absorbent surfaces is referred to as "dead", while a room with highly reflective surfaces is referred to as "live". This parameter lets you adjust the early reflection decay rate and thus the "liveness" of the room.

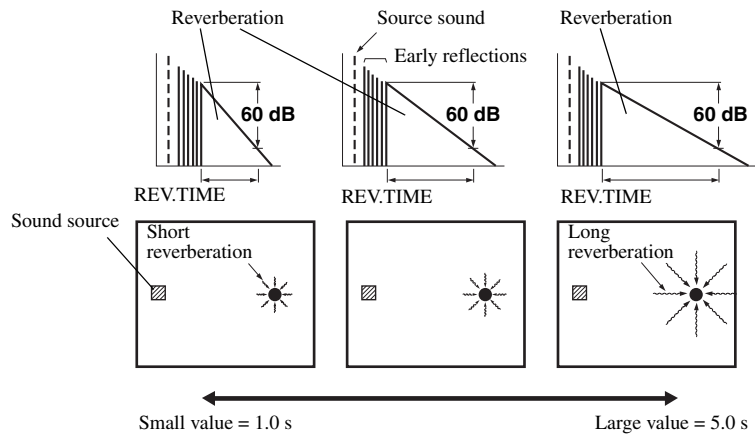
Control range: 0 to 10



REV.TIME

Reverberation time. Adjusts the amount of time taken for the dense, subsequent reverberation sound to decay by 60 dB at 1 kHz. This changes the apparent size of the acoustic environment over an extremely wide range. Set a longer reverberation time for "dead" sources and listening room environments, and a shorter time for "live" sources and listening room environments.

Control range: 1.0 to 5.0 s



Sound field parameter	Features
REV. DELAY	<p>Reverberation delay. Adjusts the time difference between the beginning of the direct sound and the beginning of the reverberation sound. The larger the value, the later the reverberation sound begins. A later reverberation sound makes you feel as if you are in a larger acoustic environment.</p> <p>Control range: 0 to 250 ms</p>
REV. LEVEL	<p>Reverberation level. Adjusts the volume of the reverberation sound. The larger the value, the stronger the reverberation becomes.</p> <p>Control range: 0 to 100%</p>
DIRECT ("2ch Stereo" only)	<p>2-channel stereo direct. Bypasses the decoders and DSP processors of this unit for pure hi-fi stereo sound when playing 2-channel analog sources.</p> <p>Choices: <b>AUTO</b>, OFF</p>
<p>⚠</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Select "AUTO" to bypass the decoders, DSP processors and the tone control circuitry only when "BASS" and "TREBLE" are set to 0 dB (page 45).</li> <li>• Select "OFF" not to bypass the decoders, DSP processors and the tone control circuitry when "BASS" and "TREBLE" are set to 0 dB.</li> <li>• When multi-channel signals are input, they are downmixed to 2 channels and output from the front left and right speakers.</li> <li>• The low-frequency signals of the front left and right channels are redirected to the subwoofer in the following cases: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– "LFE/BASS OUT" is set to "BOTH" (page 67).</li> <li>– "FRONT SP" is set to "SMALL" (page 67) and "LFE/BASS OUT" is set to "SWFR" (page 67).</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	
CT LEVEL SL LEVEL SR LEVEL SB LEVEL PL LEVEL PR LEVEL ("7ch Stereo" only)	<p>7-channel stereo center, surround left, surround right, surround back, presence left and presence right levels. Adjusts the volume level of each channel in the 7-channel stereo mode.</p> <p>Control range: 0 to 100%</p>

Sound field parameter	Features
<b>EFFECT LEVEL</b> ( <b>“Straight Enhancer”</b> and <b>“7ch Enhancer”</b> only)	Straight and 7-channel Compressed Music Enhancer effect level. The high-frequency signals of some sources may be emphasized too much. In this case, set the effect level to <b>“LOW”</b> . <hr/> Choices: <b>HIGH</b> , <b>LOW</b> <hr/> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Select <b>“HIGH”</b> for a high effect level.</li><li>• Select <b>“LOW”</b> for a low effect level.</li></ul>
<b>SUR</b> ( <b>MOVIE</b> sound field programs (except <b>“Mono Movie”</b> ) and <b>“SUR.DECODE”</b> only)	Decoder type. Select the decoder used with the selected sound field program. The decoder parameters for <b>“SUR.DECODE”</b> vary depending on the selected decoder type. See page 58 for details.

## ■ Decoder parameter descriptions

Use the following decoder parameters to customize the specific decoders in detail.

Decoder parameter	Features
<b>PANORAMA</b> ("PLIIX Music" and "PLII Music" only)	Pro Logic IIX Music and Pro Logic II Music panorama. Sends stereo signals to the surround speakers as well as the front speakers for a wraparound effect.  Choices: <b>OFF</b> , ON
<b>CENTER WIDTH</b> ("PLIIX Music" and "PLII Music" only)	Pro Logic IIX Music and Pro Logic II Music center width. Moves the center channel output completely towards the center speaker or towards the front left and right speakers. A larger value moves the center channel output towards the front left and right speakers.  Control range: 0 (center channel sound is output only from the center speaker) to 7 (center channel sound is output only from the front left and right speakers)  Initial setting: 3
<b>DIMENSION</b> ("PLIIX Music" and "PLII Music" only)	Pro Logic IIX Music and Pro Logic II Music dimension. Adjusts the sound field either towards the front or towards the rear.  Control range: -3 (towards the rear) to +3 (towards the front)  Initial setting: STD (standard)
<b>C. IMAGE</b> ("Neo:6 Music" only)	DTS Neo:6 Music center image. Adjusts the front left and right channel output relative to the center channel to make the center channel more or less dominant as necessary.  Control range: 0.0 (center channel sound is output only from the front left and right speakers) to 1.0 (center channel sound output only from the center speaker)  Initial setting: 0.3

# Customizing this unit (MANUAL SETUP)

The “MANUAL SETUP” menu allows you to manually adjust speaker and system parameters using the remote control. For the complete menu structure, see “SET MENU tree” (page 115).



The initial factory settings are indicated in bold under each parameter.

## Operating the MANUAL SETUP menu

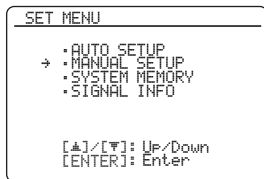
This section explains how to configure parameters in the MANUAL SETUP menu using the OSD.



- To return to the previous menu level, press **ⓈRETURN**.
- Pressing **ⓈPARAMETER** cancels the menu operation.

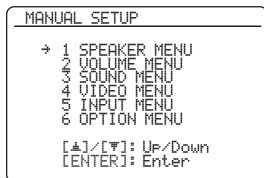
### 1 Set the operation mode selector to **ⓈAMP** and then press **ⓈMENU** to enter “SET MENU”.

The top “SET MENU” screen appears in the OSD.



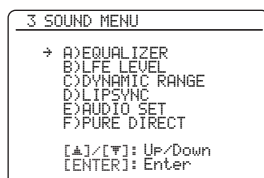
### 2 Press **Ⓢ△/▽** to select “MANUAL SETUP” and then press **ⓈENTER**.

The “MANUAL SETUP” screen appears in the OSD.



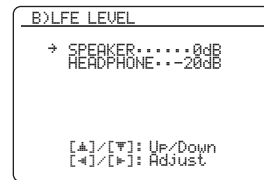
### 3 Press **Ⓢ△/▽** repeatedly and then press **ⓈENTER** to select and enter the desired menu.

As an example, the following screen appears if “SOUND MENU” is selected.



### 4 Press **Ⓢ△/▽** repeatedly and then press **ⓈENTER** to select and enter the desired submenu.

As an example, the following screen appears if “LFE LEVEL” is selected.



### 5 Press **Ⓢ△/▽** to select the desired parameter and then **Ⓢ◀/▶** to change the parameter settings.

- To increase the value, press **Ⓢ▶**.
- To decrease the value, press **Ⓢ◀**.

### 6 Press **ⓈMENU** to exit from “SET MENU”.

# 1 SPEAKER MENU

Use this feature to manually adjust the basic speaker settings. Most of the “SPEAKER MENU” parameters are set automatically when you run the automatic setup.



- Set “TEST TONE” to “ON” (page 69) to output the test tone for the “CONFIG”, “LEVEL” and “DISTANCE” settings.
- If your subwoofer can adjust the output volume and the crossover frequency, set the volume to about half way (or slightly less) and set the crossover frequency to the maximum.

## ■ Speaker configurations A)CONFIG

### LFE/bass out LFE/BASS OUT

Use this feature to select the speakers that output the LFE (low-frequency effect) and the low-frequency signals.

#### LFE signals output

Choice	Subwoofer(s) and speakers		
	Subwoofer(s)	Front speakers	Other speakers
<b>BOTH</b>	Output	No output	No output
SWFR	Output	No output	No output
FRONT	No output	Output	No output

#### Low-frequency signals output

Choice	Subwoofer(s) and speakers		
	Subwoofer(s)	Front speakers	Other speakers
<b>BOTH</b>	*1	*2	*3
SWFR	*4	*3	*3
FRONT	No output	*1	*3

- \*1 Output(s) the low-frequency signals of the front channels and other speakers set to “SMALL”.
- \*2 Always output the low-frequency signals of the front channels.
- \*3 Output the low-frequency signals if the speakers are set to “LARGE”.
- \*4 Outputs the low-frequency signals of the speakers set to “SMALL”.

### Measure for the speaker size

- The woofer section of a speaker is
- 16 cm (6.5 in) or larger: large
  - smaller than 16 cm (6.5 in): small

### Front speakers FRONT SP

Choice	Descriptions
<b>LARGE</b>	Select this setting when the front speakers are large.
SMALL	Select this setting when the front speakers are small.

#### Note

When “LFE/BASS OUT” is set to “FRONT”, you can select only “LARGE” in “FRONT SP”. If the value of “FRONT SP” is set to other than “LARGE” in advance, this unit change the value to “LARGE” automatically.

### Center speaker CENTER SP

Choice	Descriptions
LARGE	Select this setting when the center speaker is large.
<b>SMALL</b>	Select this setting when the center speaker is small.
NONE	Select this setting when you do not use the center speaker. The center channel signals are directed to the front left and right speakers.

### Surround left/right speakers SUR. L/R SP

Choice	Descriptions
LARGE	Select this setting when the surround speakers are large.
<b>SMALL</b>	Select this setting when the surround speakers are small.
NONE	Select this setting when you do not use the surround speakers. This unit is set to the Virtual CINEMA DSP mode (page 43), and “SUR.B L/R SP” is automatically set to “NONE”.

### Surround back left/right speakers

SUR. B L/R SP

Choice	Descriptions
LRGx1	Select this setting when the single surround back speaker is large.
LRGx2	Select this setting when the surround back left and right speakers are large.
SMLx1	Select this setting when the single surround back speaker is small.
SMLx2	Select this setting when the surround back left and right speakers are small.
NONE	Select this setting when you do not use the surround back speakers. The surround back channel signals are directed to the surround left and right speakers.

### Presence speakers PRESENCE SP

Choice	Descriptions
YES	Select this setting when you use the presence speakers.
NONE	Select this setting when you do not use the presence speakers.

### Bass cross over CROSS OVER

Use this feature to select the crossover frequency of all the speakers set to “SMALL” (or “SML”) in “CONFIG” (page 67). All frequencies below the selected frequency will be sent to the subwoofer or front speakers depending on the setting of “LFE/BASS OUT” (page 67).

Choices: 40Hz, 60Hz, **80Hz**, 90Hz, 100Hz, 110Hz, 120Hz, 160Hz, 200Hz



If your subwoofer can adjust the output volume and the crossover frequency, set the volume to about half way (or slightly less) and set the crossover frequency to the maximum.

### Subwoofer phase SUBWOOFER PHASE

Use this feature to switch the phase of your subwoofer if bass sounds are lacking or unclear.

Choice	Functions
NORMAL	Does not change the phase of your subwoofer.
REVERSE	Sets the phase of your subwoofer to reverse.

### Speaker level B)LEVEL

Use this feature to manually balance the speaker levels between the front left or surround left speakers and each speaker selected in “CONFIG” (page 67).

Control range: -10.0 dB to +10.0 dB

Control step: 0.5 dB

Initial setting:

FR.L/FR.R/SWFR/PR.L/PR.R: 0 dB

CENT./SUR.L/SUR.R/SB L/SB R: -1.0 dB

LEVEL	Adjusted speaker
FR.L	Front left speaker
FR.R	Front right speaker
CENT.	Center speaker
SUR.L	Surround left speaker
SUR.R	Surround right speaker
SB L	Surround back left speaker
SB R	Surround back right speaker
SWFR	Subwoofer
PR.L	Presence left speaker
PR.R	Presence right speaker

### Notes

- The available speaker channels differ depending on the “CONFIG” setting.
- Instead of “SB L” and “SB R”, “SB” is displayed if “SUR. B L/R SP” is set to either “SMLx1” or “LRGx1”.

### Speaker distance C)DISTANCE

Use this feature to manually adjust the distance of each speaker and the delay applied to the respective channel. Ideally, each speaker should be the same distance from the main listening position. However, this is not possible in most home situations. Thus, a certain amount of delay must be applied to the sound from each speaker so that all sounds will arrive at the listening position at the same time.

### Unit for the speaker distance adjustment UNIT

Initial setting:

[U.S.A. and Canada models]: feet (ft)

[Other models]: meters (m)

Choice	Functions
meters (m)	Adjusts speaker distances in meters.
feet (ft)	Adjusts speaker distances in feet.



### Speaker distances

Control range: 0.30 to 24.00 m (1.0 to 80.0 ft)

Control step: 0.10 m (0.5 ft)

Initial setting:

FRONT L/FRONT R/SWFR/PRNS L/PRNS R: 3.00 m (10.0 ft)

CENTER: 2.60 m (8.5 ft)

SUR. L/SUR. R/SB L/SB R: 2.40 m (8.0 ft)

DISTANCE	Adjusted speaker
FRONT L	Front left speaker
FRONT R	Front right speaker
CENTER	Center speaker
SUR. L	Surround left speaker
SUR. R	Surround right speaker
SB L	Surround back left speaker
SB R	Surround back right speaker
SWFR	Subwoofer
PRNS L	Presence left speaker
PRNS R	Presence right speaker

#### Notes

- The available speaker channels differ depending on the “CONFIG” setting.
- Instead of “SB L” and “SB R”, “SUR.B” is displayed if “SUR.B L/R SP” is set to either “SMLx1” or “LRGx1”.

### ■ Test tone D)TEST TONE

Turns the test tone output on or off for the “CONFIG”, “LEVEL” and “DISTANCE” settings.

Choice	Functions
OFF	This unit does not output the test tone for the “CONFIG”, “LEVEL” and “DISTANCE” settings.
ON	This unit outputs the test tone for the “CONFIG”, “LEVEL” and “DISTANCE” settings.



If you use a handheld sound pressure level meter, hold at arm’s length and point upwards so that the meter is in the listening position. With the meter set to the 70 dB scale and to C SLOW, calibrate each speaker to 75 dB.

#### Note

This function is automatically turned off if you exit from “SPEAKER MENU”.

## 2 VOLUME MENU

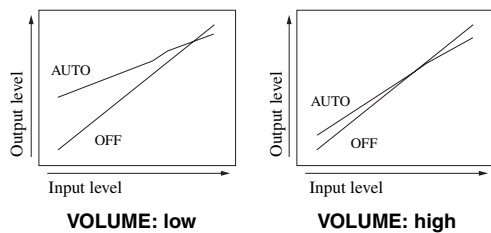
Use this menu to manually adjust the various volume settings.

### Adaptive dynamic range control

#### ADAPTIVE DRC

Use this feature to adjust the dynamic range in conjunction with the volume level. This feature is useful when you are listening at lower volumes or at night. When “ADAPTIVE DRC” is set to “AUTO”, this unit controls the dynamic range as follows:

- If the VOLUME setting is low: the dynamic range is narrow
- If the VOLUME setting is high: the dynamic range is wide



Choice	Functions
AUTO	Adjusts the dynamic range automatically.
OFF	Does not adjust the dynamic range automatically.



- You can also adjust the dynamic range of the bitstream signal sources by using “DYNAMIC RANGE” in “SOUND MENU” (page 71).
- This function is also useful for listening with your headphones.

#### Note

The adaptive dynamic range control feature does not function when this unit is in the Pure Direct mode (page 45).

### Adaptive DSP level ADAPTIVE DSP LEVEL

Use this feature to make fine adjustments of the DSP effect level (page 60) automatically in conjunction with the volume level.

Choice	Functions
AUTO	Adjusts the DSP effect level in conjunction with the volume level.
OFF	Does not adjust the DSP effect level automatically.

#### Note

Even if you set “ADAPTIVE DSP LEVEL” to “AUTO”, this unit does not change but the fine-tunes the specified value of “DSP LEVEL” (page 60).

**Muting type** MUTING TYPE

Use this feature to adjust how much the mute function reduces the output volume (page 36).

Choice	Functions
<b>FULL</b>	Mutes all the audio output.
-20dB	Reduces the current volume by 20 dB.

**Maximum volume** MAX VOL.

Use this feature to set the maximum volume level in the main zone. This feature is useful to avoid the unexpected loud sound by mistake. For example, the original volume range is -80.0 dB to +16.5 dB. However, when “MAX VOL.” is set to -5.0 dB, the volume range becomes -80.0 dB to -5.0 dB.

Control range: -30.0 dB to +15.0 dB, **+16.5 dB**

Control step: 5.0 dB

**Notes**

- When this unit is in the automatic setup procedure, the volume level is automatically set to 0 dB regardless of the current “MAX VOL.” setting.
- The “MAX VOL.” setting takes priority over the “INIT. VOL.” setting.

**Initial volume** INIT. VOL.

Use this feature to set the volume level of the main zone when the power of this unit is turned on.

Choices: **OFF**, MUTE, -80.0 dB to +16.5 dB

Control step: 0.5 dB

**Note**

The “MAX VOL.” setting takes priority over the “INIT. VOL.” setting.

### 3 SOUND MENU

Use this feature to adjust the audio parameters.

■ **Equalizer** A)EQUALIZER

Use this feature to select the parametric equalizer or the graphic equalizer.

**Equalizer type select** EQ TYPE

Use this feature to select the type of equalizer.

Choice	Functions
AUTO PEQ	Uses the parametric equalizer adjusted in the automatic setup procedure.
<b>GEQ</b>	Uses the equalizer settings adjusted in “GEQ EDIT”.
OFF	Deactivates the equalizing feature.

**Note**

“AUTO PEQ” is available only after you have done the automatic setup procedure (page 29).

**Graphic equalizer edit** GEQ EDIT

Use this feature to adjust the tonal quality of each channel.

Speaker channel: FRONT L, FRONT R, CENTER, SUR. L, SUR. R, SB L, SB R, PRNS L, PRNS R, SWFR

Frequency band: 63 Hz, 160 Hz, 400 Hz, 1 kHz, 2.5 kHz, 6.3 kHz, 16 kHz

Control range: -6.0 dB to +6.0 dB

Control step: 0.5 dB



To output a test tone while adjusting the tonal quality, set “TEST” to “ON”.

**Notes**

- “GEQ EDIT” is available only when “EQ TYPE” is set to “GEQ”.
- The available speaker channels differ depending on the “CONFIG” setting.
- Instead of “SB L” and “SB R”, “SB” is displayed if “SUR.B L/R SP” is set to either “SMLx1” or “LRGx1”.

**Parametric equalizer select** PEQ SELECT

Use this feature to select the parametric equalizer type that applied to the results of the automatic setup.

Choice	Functions
NATURAL	Averages out the frequency response of each all speakers with higher frequencies being less emphasized. Recommended if the "FLAT" setting sounds a little harsh.
FLAT	Averages frequency response of all speakers. Recommended if all of your speakers are of similar quality.
FRONT	Adjusts the frequency response of each speaker in accordance with the sound of your front speakers. Recommended if your front speakers are of much higher quality than your other speakers.

**Note**

"PEQ SELECT" is available only when "EQ TYPE" is set to "AUTO PEQ".

■ **Low-frequency effect level**

B) LFE LEVEL

Use this feature to adjust the output level of the LFE (low-frequency effect) channel according to the capacity of your subwoofer or headphones. The LFE channel carries low-frequency special effects which are only added to certain scenes. This setting is effective when the input signal contains the LFE channel.

Control range: -20 to 0 dB

Control step: 1 dB

**Speakers** SPEAKER

Adjusts the speaker LFE level.

**Headphones** HEADPHONE

Adjusts the headphone LFE level.

**Note**

Depending on the "LFE/BASS OUT" setting (page 67), some signals may not be output at the SUBWOOFER PRE OUT jack.

■ **Dynamic range** C) DYNAMIC RANGE

Use this feature to select the amount of dynamic range compression to be applied to your speakers or headphones. This setting is effective only when this unit is decoding bitstream signals.

**Speakers** SPEAKER

Adjusts the dynamic range compression for the speakers.

**Headphones** HEADPHONE

Adjusts the dynamic range compression for the headphones.

Choice	Functions
MIN/AUTO	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>MIN: Adjusts the dynamic range to narrow when this unit is decoding bitstream signals (except Dolby TrueHD).</li> <li>AUTO: Adjusts the dynamic range according to the instruction of the input source signals when this unit is decoding Dolby TrueHD signals.</li> </ul>
STD	Adjusts the dynamic range to medium. When this unit is decoding Dolby TrueHD signals, the dynamic range control is always active regardless of the instruction of the input source signals.
MAX	Preserves the greatest amount of dynamic range.

■ **Audio and video synchronization (lip sync)** D) LIP SYNC

**HDMI automatic lip sync mode** HDMI AUTO

If the connected video monitor is connected to the HDMI OUT jack of this unit and compatible with the automatic audio and video synchronization function (automatic lip sync), this unit adjusts the audio and video synchronization automatically. Use this feature to activate or deactivate the automatic lip sync.

Choice	Functions
OFF	Select this setting if the video monitor is not compatible with the automatic lip sync or you do not want to use the automatic lip sync. Use "MANUAL DELAY" to adjustment the audio and video synchronization.
ON	Select this setting if the connected video monitor is compatible with the automatic lip sync. Use "AUTO DELAY" to make fine adjustments of the audio and video synchronization.

**Auto delay** AUTO DELAY

Use this feature to make fine adjustments of the audio and video synchronization when you set "HDMI AUTO" to "ON".

Control range: 0 to 240 ms

Control step: 1 ms



"offset" indicates the difference between the value of the audio delay that this unit sets automatically and the value of the audio delay that you set in "AUTO". This unit stores the value of "offset" and applies the value to other automatic lip sync compatible video monitors.

**Manual delay** MANUAL DELAY

Use this feature to adjust the delay of the sound output manually to synchronize audio with video images when you set "HDMI AUTO" to "OFF".

Control range: 0 to 240 ms

Control step: 1 ms

■ **Audio settings** E>AUDIO SET

**Tone bypass** TONE BYPASS

Use this feature to select whether the audio output bypasses the tone control circuitry when “TREBLE” and “BASS” are set to 0 dB (page 45).

Choice	Functions
<b>AUTO</b>	Automatically bypasses the tone control circuitry to provide the purest signal possible when “TREBLE” and “BASS” are set to 0 dB.
<b>OFF</b>	Does not bypass the tone control circuitry.

**HDMI audio** HDMI AUDIO

Use this feature to select the types of the audio signals output at the HDMI OUT jack on the rear panel of this unit.

Choice	Functions
<b>AMP</b>	Outputs audio signals that can be decoded by this unit.
<b>AMP+TV</b>	Outputs audio signals that can be decoded by your video monitor connected to the HDMI OUT jack of this unit.

**Note**

Available audio/video signals depend on the specification of the connected video monitor. Refer to the instruction manuals of your video monitor and audio source component.

■ **Pure direct** F>PURE DIRECT

Use this feature to select whether this unit outputs the video signals when this unit is in the Pure Direct mode.

Choice	Functions
<b>AUDIO</b>	Does not Output video signals.
<b>AUDIO+VID</b> <b>EO</b>	Outputs video signals. For the better sound quality, this unit only activates the limited video features.

**Note**

You cannot use the OSD menu even if “PURE DIRECT” is set to “AUDIO+VIDEO”.

## 4 VIDEO MENU

Use this feature to adjust the video parameters.



You can reset the all parameters in “VIDEO MENU” to the initial factory settings by using “VIDEO” of “INITIALIZE” in “ADVANCED SETUP” (page 95).

**Video conversion** VIDEO CONV.

Use this feature to set whether to convert the video signals input at the VIDEO, S VIDEO, and COMPONENT VIDEO jacks.

Choice	Functions
<b>ON</b>	Converts composite, S-video, and component video signals interchangeably and up-converts composite, S-video, and component video signals to HDMI video signals.
<b>OFF</b>	Does not convert any signals.

**Notes**

- This unit does not convert 480 line video signals and 576 line video signals interchangeably.
- 480p-, 576p-, 1080i- and 720p-resolution video signals cannot be output at the S VIDEO and VIDEO MONITOR OUT jacks.
- The converted video signals are only output at the MONITOR OUT jacks. When recording a video source, you must make the same type of video connections between each component.
- When composite video or S-video signals from a VCR are converted into component video signals, the picture quality may suffer depending on your VCR.
- Unconventional signals input at the composite video or S-video jacks cannot be converted or may be output abnormally. In such cases, set “VIDEO CONV.” to “OFF”.

**Component interlace/progressive up-conversion**  
COMPONENT I/P

Use this feature to activate or deactivate the analog interlace/progressive conversion of the analog video signals input at the composite video, S-video and component video jacks so that the analog video signals deinterlaced from 480i (NTSC)/576i (PAL) to 480p/576p are output at the COMPONENT MONITOR OUT jacks.

Choice	Functions
<b>ON</b>	Activates the analog interlace/progressive up-conversion of the analog video signals.
<b>OFF</b>	Deactivates the analog interlace/progressive up-conversion of the analog video signals.

**Notes**

- The “COMPONENT I/P” parameter appears only when you set “VIDEO CONV.” to “ON”.
- If your video monitor does not support analog video signals with 480p/576p of resolution, the SET MENU items may not be displayed on your video monitor when “COMPONENT I/P” is set to “ON”.

**HDMI resolution HDMI RES.**

Use this feature to activate or deactivate the HDMI up-scaling of the analog video signals input at the VIDEO, S VIDEO and COMPONENT VIDEO jacks so that the up-scaled video signals are output at the HDMI OUT jack. This unit up-scales the video signals as follows:

- 480i (NTSC)/576i (PAL) → 480p/576p, 1080i, 720p, or 1080p
- 480p/576p → 1080i, 720p, or 1080p

Choice	Functions
<b>THROUGH</b>	Does not up-scale any analog video signals.
480p (or 576p), 1080i, 720p, 1080p	Up-scales analog video signals to 480p or 576p, 1080i, 720p, or 1080p of resolution.

**Notes**

- “HDMI RES.” is available only when “VIDEO CONV.” is set to “ON”.
- This unit automatically detects the video signal resolutions supported by the connected video monitor and uses an asterisk (\*) to indicate them. If this unit cannot detect the resolutions, set “MONITOR CHECK” to “SKIP” (page 95).

**HDMI aspect ratio HDMI ASPECT**

Use this feature to select the adjustment of aspect ratio for analog video signals output at the HDMI OUT jack.

Choice	Functions
<b>THRGH</b>	Does not make any adjustments to the aspect ratio for the HDMI video signal sources.
16:9	Displays video images with the aspect ratio of 4:3 on your video monitor with the aspect ratio of 16:9. Black stripes appear on the right and left sides as a result.
SMART	Fits video images with the aspect ratio of 4:3 to your video monitor with the aspect ratio of 16:9.

**Notes**

- “HDMI ASPECT” is available only when “HDMI RES.” is not set to “THROUGH”.
- If the aspect ratio of the input video source is other than 4:3, this unit automatically ignores the setting of “HDMI ASPECT”.
- When “HDMI ASPECT” is set to “SMART”, the video images of the edge of the video monitor are rather stretched.

**5 INPUT MENU**

Use this menu to adjust the parameters of each input source.

Input source	Parameter
A)TUNER	INPUT RENAME VOL. TRIM BGV
B)MULTI CH	INPUT RENAME VOL. TRIM BGV INPUT CH FRONT
C)PHONO D)CD E)TV F)MD/CD-R	I/O ASSIGNMENT INPUT RENAME VOL. TRIM DECODER MODE BGV
G)BD/HD DVD H)DVD I)CBL/SAT J)DVR K)VCR L)V-AUX	I/O ASSIGNMENT INPUT RENAME VOL. TRIM DECODER MODE
M)DOCK	INPUT RENAME VOL. TRIM STANDBY CHARGE
N)BLUETOOTH	INPUT RENAME VOL. TRIM BGV START PAIRING
O)USB	INPUT RENAME VOL. TRIM BGV

## Input/output assignment

### I/O ASSIGNMENT

Use this feature to assign the input/output jacks according to the component to be used if the initial settings of this unit do not correspond to your needs. Change the parameter to reassign the respective jacks and effectively connect more components.

Once the input/output jacks are reassigned, you can select the corresponding component by using the **INPUT** selector (or the input selector buttons (③)).



- “NONE” appears in the OSD when no input source is assigned to the jack.
- You cannot select a specific item more than once for the same type of jack.
- An asterisk (\*) appears to the right of the jack names that have been changed from their previous settings.
- The input source currently assigned to the selected jack is shown in the parentheses next to “Current”.

## Input rename INPUT RENAME

Use this feature to change the name of the input source (up to 9 characters) that appears in the OSD and in the front panel display.

- To locate the position to edit, press **⑧** < / >.
- To select a character, press **⑧** Δ / ▽.
- To confirm the setting, press **⑧** ENTER.
- To return to the previous screen without change, press **⑨** RETURN.



Press **⑧** ▽ to change the character in the following order, or press **⑧** Δ to go in the reverse order: A to Z, 0 to 9, a to z, symbols (#, \*, -, +, etc.), space.

## Volume trim VOL. TRIM

Use this feature to adjust the level of the signal input at each jack. This feature is useful if you want to balance the level of each input source to avoid sudden changes in volume when switching between input sources.

Control range: -6.0 dB to +6.0 dB

Control step: 0.5 dB

Initial setting: 0.0 dB



This parameter also affects the signals output at the audio ZONE OUT jacks.

## Decoder mode DECODER MODE

Use this feature to switch the decoder activation mode.

Choice	Functions
<b>AUTO</b>	Automatically detects digital audio signal input types and selects the appropriate decoder.
DTS	Activates the DTS decoder and plays back only DTS digital audio signals when digital audio signals are input.

### Note

“DECODER MODE” is available only when the digital audio input jacks (HDMI, OPTICAL and/or COAXIAL) are assigned to the selected input source.

## Audio input BGV BGV

Use this feature to select the video source played in the background of the selected audio input source.

Choice	Functions
BD/HD DVD, DVD, CBL/SAT, DVR, VCR, V-AUX, DOCK	Selects the corresponding input source as the background video source.
<b>OFF</b>	Does not play the video source in the background.

## Charge on standby STANDBY CHARGE

Use this feature to select whether this unit charges the battery of the stationed iPod or not when this unit is in the standby mode.

Choice	Functions
<b>AUTO</b>	Charges the battery of the stationed iPod when this unit is turned on and in the standby mode.
OFF	Charges the battery of the stationed iPod only when this unit is turned on.

## Start pairing START PAIRING

Use this feature to start pairing the connected Yamaha Bluetooth wireless audio receiver (such as YBA-10, sold separately) with your Bluetooth component. For details about the pairing, refer to “Pairing the Bluetooth™ receiver and your Bluetooth component” (page 54).

To ensure security, a time limit of 8 minutes is set for the pairing operation. You are recommended to read and fully understand all the instructions before starting.

### 1 Press **⑧** ENTER to start pairing.

The connected Bluetooth receiver starts searching Bluetooth components. “Searching...” appears in the OSD.

### 2 Check that the Bluetooth component detects the Bluetooth receiver.

For details, refer to the instruction manual of the Bluetooth component.

### 3 Select the Bluetooth receiver in the Bluetooth device list and then enter the pass key "0000" on the Bluetooth component.

Once this unit completes the pairing successfully, "Completed" appears.



To cancel the pairing, press **Ⓢ**RETURN.

### 4 Press **Ⓢ**RETURN to exit from "START PAIRING".

#### Notes

- If the connected Bluetooth receiver cannot find any Bluetooth components, "Not found" appears.
- If a Bluetooth receiver is not connected to this unit, "No Bluetooth receiver" appears.

#### Input channels INPUT CH

Use this setting to select the number of channels input from an external decoder (page 22).

Choice	Functions
6ch	Select this setting if the connected component outputs discrete 6-channel audio signals.
8ch	Select this setting if the connected component outputs discrete 8-channel audio signals. You also need to configure the "FRONT" setting (below).

#### Front left and right channels input jack FRONT

If you set "INPUT CH" to "8CH", you need to specify the analog audio jacks at which the front left and right channel signals output from the connected external decoder are input.

Choices: CD, TV, MD/CD-R, **BD/HD DVD**, DVD, CBL/SAT, DVR, VCR, V-AUX

#### Note

"FRONT" is available only when "INPUT CH" is set to "8CH".

## 6 OPTION MENU

Use this menu to adjust the optional system parameters.

### ■ Display settings A)DISPLAY SET

#### Note

You can reset the "OSD SHIFT" and "GRAY BACK" settings to the initial factory settings by using "VIDEO" of "INITIALIZE" in "ADVANCED SETUP" (page 95).

#### Dimmer DIMMER

Use this feature to adjust the brightness of the front panel display.

Control range: -4 to 0

Control step: 1

- To make the front panel display dimmer, press **Ⓢ**<.
- To make the front panel display brighter, press **Ⓢ**>.

#### OSD shift OSD SHIFT

Use this feature to adjust the vertical position of the OSD.

Control range: -5 (downward) to +5 (upward)

Control step: 1

Initial setting: 0

- To lower the position of the OSD, press **Ⓢ**<.
- To raise the position of the OSD, press **Ⓢ**>.

#### Gray back GRAY BACK

Use this feature to display a gray background in your video monitor when there is no video signal being input.

Choice	Functions
AUTO	Displays a gray background on your video monitor when there is no video signal being input.
OFF	Does not display a gray background on your video monitor.

#### Note

Depending on the video signals being input or the system setting of your video monitor (NTSC or PAL), the OSD may be displayed abnormally. In such cases, set "GRAY BACK" to "OFF".

### Short message display

#### SHORT MESSAGE

Use this feature to activate or deactivate the short message display function.

Choice	Functions
<b>ON</b>	Activates the short message display function. The contents of the front panel display appear at the bottom of the screen each time you operate this unit.
<b>OFF</b>	Deactivates the short message display function.

#### Note

The short message display does not appear in the following cases:

- when the component video signals with 480p/576p, 720p, 1080i or 1080p resolutions are input
- when HDMI video signals are input

### On-screen display time **ON SCREEN**

Use this feature to set the amount of time to display the iPod menu or USB menu in the OSD after you perform a certain operation.

Choice	Functions
<b>ALWAYS</b>	Displays the OSD unceasingly during an operation.
<b>10S</b>	Turns off the OSD 10 seconds after you perform a certain operation.
<b>30S</b>	Turns off the OSD 30 seconds after you perform a certain operation.

### Front panel display scroll **FL SCROLL**

Use this feature to set the mode to display the iPod menu or USB menu (such as song title) in the front panel display.

Choice	Functions
<b>CONT</b>	Select this to display the operation status in the front panel display in a continuous manner.
<b>ONCE</b>	Select this to display the operation status in the front panel display by the first 14 alphanumeric characters after scrolling all characters once.

### Memory guard **B)MEMORY GUARD**

Use this feature to prevent accidental changes to sound field program parameter and other system settings.

Choice	Functions
<b>OFF</b>	Turns off the memory guard feature.
<b>ON</b>	Turns on the memory guard feature. While it is turned on ("G" appears at the top right of the "SET MENU" screen), the following settings are protected. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- sound field program parameters</li> <li>- "AUTO SETUP" items</li> <li>- all speaker levels</li> <li>- "MANUAL SETUP" items</li> </ul>

#### Note

You can change the following parameters even if "MEMORY GUARD" is set to "ON":

- "DECODER MODE" in "INPUT MENU" (page 74)
- "MEMORY GUARD"
- "SUR." of the sound field program parameter (page 64)
- "TONE BYPASS" in "SOUND MENU" (page 72)
- Loading the system settings (page 79)

### Initial configuration **C)INIT. CONFIG**

Use this feature to select the settings of the audio input jack select, active decoders and extended surround when you turn on this unit.

#### Audio select **AUDIO SELECT**

Use this feature to designate the default audio input jack select setting (page 35) for the input sources connected to the DIGITAL INPUT jacks when you turn on the power of this unit.

Choice	Functions
<b>AUTO</b>	Automatically detects the type of input signals and selects the appropriate audio input jack select setting.
<b>LAST</b>	Automatically selects the last input jack select setting used for the connected input source.

#### Decoder mode **DECODER MODE**

Use this feature to designate the default decoder mode (page 74) for the input sources connected to the DIGITAL INPUT jacks when you turn on the power of this unit.

Choice	Functions
<b>AUTO</b>	Automatically detects the type of input signals and select the appropriate decoder mode setting.
<b>LAST</b>	Automatically selects the last decoder mode setting used for the connected input source.



### Extended surround EXT.D SUR.

Use this feature to designate the extended decoder mode (page 59) for the input sources connected to the DIGITAL INPUT jacks when you turn on the power of this unit.

Choice	Functions
<b>AUTO</b>	Automatically detects the digital audio input signals and activates the appropriate decoder.
<b>LAST</b>	Automatically selects the decoder mode selected last time.

### ■ Zone set D)ZONE SET

Use this feature to set the items related in Zone 2 or Zone 3.

#### Note

"MAX VOL." and "INIT. VOL." are available only when "VOLUME" is set to "VAR".

### Setting zone

Select the zone which you want to configure the settings for.

### Zone 2/Zone 3 amplifier AMP

Use this feature to select how the Zone 2 or Zone 3 speakers are amplified. This parameter also effects the speaker settings and the sound output of sound field programs in the main zone.

Choice	Functions
<b>EXT</b>	Select this setting when the Zone 2 or Zone 3 speakers are connected to the external amplifier which is connected to the ZONE OUT (ZONE 2 or ZONE 3) jacks of this unit.
[SP1]	Select this setting when the Zone 2 or Zone 3 speakers are directly connected to the SP1 speaker terminals of this unit.
[SP2]	Select this setting when the Zone 2 or Zone 3 speakers are directly connected to the SP2 speaker terminals of this unit.
<b>BOTH</b>	Select this setting when the Zone 2 or Zone 3 speakers are connected to both the SP1 and SP2 speaker terminals of this unit (for example, the speakers are connected using the bi-amplifier connection or there are four speakers in the room) or when you want to play back the same source in the Zone 2 and Zone 3 simultaneously.



For details on Zone 2 and Zone 3 connections, see "Connecting the Zone 2 and Zone 3 components" (page 91).

#### Notes

- If "BI AMP" in "ADVANCED SETUP" is set to "ON" (page 95), the "AMP" setting is fixed to "EXT".
- When you set "AMP" to "[SP1]" and the corresponding zone is turned on, no sound is output from the surround speakers.
- When you set "AMP" to "[SP2]" and the corresponding zone is turned on, no sound is output from both the surround and surround back speakers.

- When you set "AMP" to "BOTH" for either "ZONE 2" or "ZONE 3", the "AMP" setting for another zone is fixed to "EXT".
- When you set "AMP" to "BOTH" and the corresponding zone is turned on, no sound is output from both the surround and surround back speakers.

### Zone 2/Zone 3 volume VOLUME

Use this feature to select whether this unit controls the volume level of the audio signals output at the ZONE OUT (ZONE 2 or ZONE 3) jacks when you set "AMP" to "EXT" (page 77).

Choice	Functions
<b>VAR</b>	Select this setting if you want to adjust the ZONE OUT (ZONE 2 or ZONE 3) volume level using the remote control of this unit.
<b>FIX</b>	Select this setting if you want to adjust the Zone 2 or Zone 3 volume level on the external amplifier. This unit fixed the ZONE OUT (ZONE 2 or ZONE 3) volume level to a standard line level.

### Zone 2/Zone 3 maximum volume MAX VOL.

Use this feature to set the maximum volume level in the Zone 2 or Zone 3.

Control range: -30.0 dB to +15.0 dB, **+16.5dB**

Control step: 5.0 dB

#### Note

The "MAX VOL." setting takes priority over the "INIT. VOL." setting.

### Zone 2/Zone 3 initial volume INIT. VOL.

Use this feature to set the volume level of Zone 2 or Zone 3 when the power of Zone 2 or Zone 3 is turned on.

Choices: **OFF**, MUTE, -80.0 dB to +16.5 dB

Control step: 0.5 dB

#### Note

The "MAX VOL." setting takes priority over the "INIT. VOL." setting.

# Saving and recalling the system settings (SYSTEM MEMORY)

Use this feature to save up to six of your favorite settings that can be easily recalled when needed. You can save the following system setting parameters:

Saved parameters	Page
“SPEAKER MENU” parameters (except “TEST TONE”)	67
“VOLUME MENU” parameters (except “INIT. VOL.”)	69
“SOUND MENU” parameters*	70
“VIDEO MENU” parameters	72
“DISPLAY SET” parameters (except “SHORT MESSAGE”)	75
Sound field program (or “Pure Direct”) currently selected	38
Sound field parameter settings	59
Tonal quality control settings*	45

\* The settings of “DYNAMIC RANGE”, “LFE LEVEL”, and the tonal quality control for headphones are not saved.

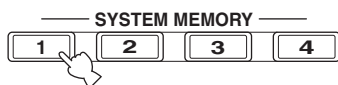
## Saving the system settings

### ■ Saving by the **ⓄSYSTEM MEMORY** buttons

You can save the system settings stored in “MEMORY1” to “MEMORY4” by pressing the corresponding **ⓄSYSTEM MEMORY** buttons.

**Press and hold one of the **ⓄSYSTEM MEMORY** buttons on the remote control for 4 seconds.**

“MEMORY 1 SAVE Done” (example) appears in the front panel display, and then this unit saves the current system setting to the corresponding memory number.

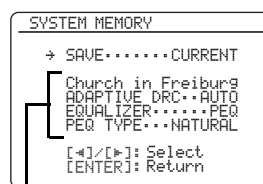


If system settings are already stored in the selected memory number, this unit overwrites the old settings.

### ■ Saving by the SET MENU operation

You can save the system settings stored in “MEMORY1” to “MEMORY6” by using the “SYSTEM MEMORY” menu in “SET MENU”.

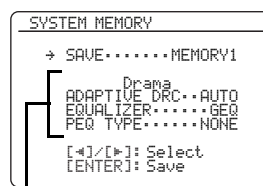
- 1 Set the operation mode selector on the remote control to **ⓄAMP** and then press **ⓄMENU**.**  
The top “SET MENU” screen appears in the OSD.
- 2 Press **Ⓞ∇** to select “SYSTEM MEMORY” and then press **ⓄENTER**.**  
The “SYSTEM MEMORY” menu appears.
- 3 Press **Ⓞ∇** to select “SAVE” and then press **ⓄENTER**.**  
The current system settings are displayed.



Current system settings

- 4 Press **Ⓞ◀/▶** repeatedly to select the desired memory number (“MEMORY1” to “MEMORY6”).**

The system settings currently stored in the selected memory number are displayed. If the memory number is not in use, “EMPTY” appears.



System settings stored in the selected memory number



- If system settings are already stored in the selected memory number, this unit overwrites the old settings.
- To load the system settings with the **ⓄSYSTEM MEMORY** button operation, use one of “MEMORY1” to “MEMORY4”.

5 Press **Ⓚ** **ENTER** to save the current system settings to the selected memory number.

6 Press **Ⓚ** **MENU** to exit from “SET MENU”.

## Loading the system settings

### Note

If you load the system settings, the settings currently configured are overwritten. If you do not want to erase the current settings, save the settings using the SYSTEM MEMORY feature in advance.

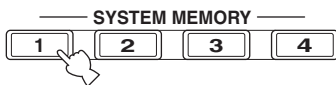
### ■ Loading by the **Ⓚ** **SYSTEM MEMORY** buttons

You can recall the system settings stored in “MEMORY1” to “MEMORY4” by pressing the corresponding

**Ⓚ** **SYSTEM MEMORY** buttons.

1 Press one of the **Ⓚ** **SYSTEM MEMORY** buttons on the remote control to select the desired memory number.

“MEMORY 1 LOAD” (example) appears in the front panel display.



“EMPTY” appears in the menu screen if no system settings are stored in the selected memory number.

2 Press the selected **Ⓚ** **SYSTEM MEMORY** button once more to confirm the selection.

This unit loads the settings stored in the selected memory number.

### ■ Loading by the SET MENU operation

1 Set the operation mode selector on the remote control to **Ⓚ** **AMP** and then press **Ⓚ** **MENU**.

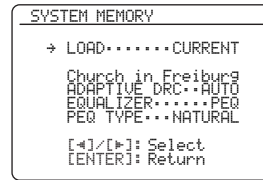
The top “SET MENU” display appears in the OSD.

2 Press **Ⓚ** **∇** to select “SYSTEM MEMORY” and then press **Ⓚ** **ENTER**.

The “SYSTEM MEMORY” menu appears.

3 Press **Ⓚ** **ENTER** to select “LOAD”.

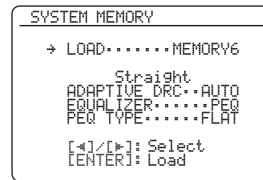
The current system settings are displayed.



4 Press **Ⓚ** **◀/▶** repeatedly to select the desired memory number where the system settings are stored and then press

**Ⓚ** **ENTER**.

This unit loads the selected system settings.

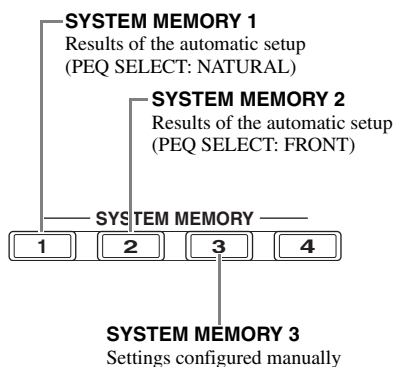


5 Press **Ⓚ** **MENU** to exit from “SET MENU”.

## Using examples

### ■ Example 1: Comparing the results of the automatic setup and manual setup

This unit is equipped with three types of parametric equalizer settings (page 71), and you can also make your customized configuration of the sound settings of this unit by using the “MANUAL SETUP” parameters (see page 66). To compare the results of the automatic setup or your manual configuration, use the **SYSTEM MEMORY** buttons.

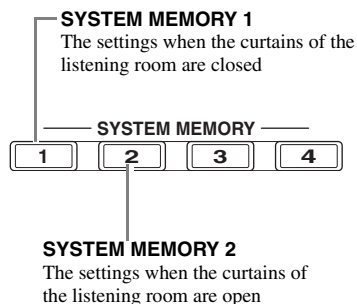


#### Saving each setting

- 1 Perform the automatic setup (page 29).**
- 2 Press and hold **SYSTEM MEMORY 1** for 4 seconds.**  
This unit stores the results of the automatic setup (PEQ SELECT: NATURAL) to “MEMORY1”.
- 3 Set “PEQ SELECT” to “FRONT” (page 71).**
- 4 Press and hold **SYSTEM MEMORY 2** for 4 seconds.**  
This unit stores the results of the automatic setup (PEQ SELECT: FRONT) to “MEMORY2”.
- 5 Configure the parameters of “SPEAKER MENU” (page 67) and “GEQ EDIT” (page 70) manually.**
- 6 Press and hold **SYSTEM MEMORY 3** for 4 seconds.**  
This unit stores the settings configured manually to “MEMORY3”.

### ■ Example 2: Switching the settings for different room environments

The tonal characteristics of the listening room may vary depending on the situations of the room (for example, whether the curtains are open or closed), and the settings of this unit should be arranged for each situation of the room. You can switch between the settings of this unit easily by using **SYSTEM MEMORY** buttons.



#### Saving each setting

- 1 Close the curtains of the listening room and then perform the automatic setup (page 29).**
- 2 Press and hold **SYSTEM MEMORY 1** for 4 seconds.**  
This unit stores the settings for the current room situation (i.e. the curtains are closed) to “MEMORY1”.
- 3 Open the curtains of the listening room and then perform the automatic setup.**
- 4 Press and hold **SYSTEM MEMORY 2** for 4 seconds.**  
This unit stores the current room situation (i.e. the curtains are open) to “MEMORY2”.

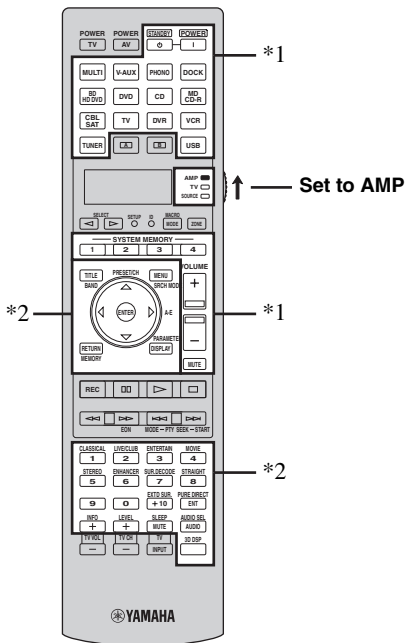
# Remote control features

In addition to controlling this unit, the remote control can also operate other audiovisual components made by Yamaha and other manufacturers. To control your TV or other components, you must set up the appropriate remote control code for each input source (page 83).

## Controlling this unit, a TV, or other components

### Controlling this unit

Set the operation mode selector to **AMP** to control this unit.



### Notes

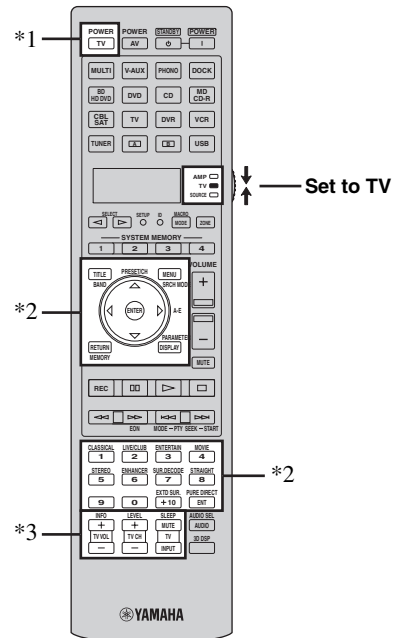
- \*1 These buttons always control this unit regardless of the operation mode selector position.
- \*2 These buttons control this unit only when the component operation mode selector is set to **AMP**.

### Controlling a TV

Set the operation mode selector to **TV** to control your TV. To control your TV, you must set the appropriate remote control code for the TV operation mode in advance (page 83).



If no code has been set for the TV operation mode, the remote control operates the component that is set to the TV control area (page 83).



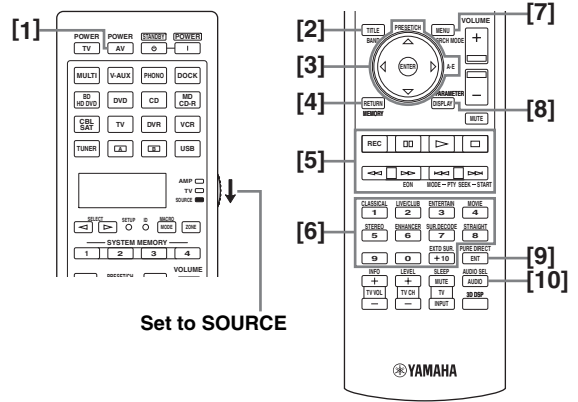
### Notes

- \*1 **TV POWER** can always turn on or off the power of the TV regardless of the operation mode selector.
- \*2 These buttons control your TV only when the operation mode selector is set to **TV**. For details, see the “TV” column on page 82.
- \*3 These buttons control your TV only when the operation mode selector is set to **TV** or **SOURCE**.

Remote control	Functions
TV VOL +/-	Increases or decreases the volume level.
TV CH +/-	Changes the TV channel.
TV MUTE	Mutes the audio output.
TV INPUT	Changes the input source.

### ■ Controlling other components

Set the operation mode selector to **⑤SOURCE** to control other components selected with the input selector buttons (③) or [A], [B]. You must set the appropriate remote control code for each input source in advance (page 83). The following table shows the function of each control button used to control other components assigned to each input selector button (③) or [A], [B]. Be advised that some buttons may not correctly operate the selected component.



The remote control has 16 modes (input areas) to control components so that the remote control can operate up to 16 different components.

	Blu-ray Disc/ HD DVD player/ recorder	DVD player	LD player	DVD recorder/ Digital video recorder	VCR	TV	Cable TV/ Satellite tuner	CD player	MD recorder/ CD recorder	Tape deck	Tuner
[1] AV POWER	Power *1	Power *1	Power *1	Power *1	Power *1	DVR power *2	Power *1	Power *1	Power *1	Power *1	Power *1
[2] TITLE BAND	Title	Title		Title		Title					Band
[3] PRESET/ CH Δ	Menu up	Menu up		Menu up	Channel up	Menu up	Channel up				Menu up
PRESET/ CH ∇	Menu down	Menu down		Menu down	Channel down	Menu down	Channel down				Menu down
CAT. A-E Δ	Menu left	Menu left		Menu left		Menu left					Menu left
CAT. A-E ∇	Menu right	Menu right		Menu right		Menu right				Direction A/B	Menu right
ENTER	Menu enter	Menu enter		Menu enter		Menu enter					Menu enter
[4] RETURN, MEMORY	Return	Return		Return		Return					Memory
[5] REC	Record (recorder)	Disc skip		Record	Record	DVR record *2	DVR record *2	Disc skip	Record	Record	
⏸	Pause	Pause	Pause	Pause	Pause	DVR pause *2	DVR pause *2	Pause	Pause	Pause	
▶	Play	Play	Play	Play	Play	DVR play *2	DVR play *2	Play	Play	Play	
⏹	Stop	Stop	Stop	Stop	Stop	DVR stop *2	DVR stop *2	Stop	Stop	Stop	
◀◀	Search backward	Search backward	Search backward	Search backward	Search backward	DVR search backward *2	DVR search backward *2	Search backward	Search backward	Search backward	
▶▶	Search forward	Search forward	Search forward	Search forward	Search forward	DVR search forward *2	DVR search forward *2	Search forward	Search forward	Search forward	
⏮	Skip backward	Skip backward	Skip backward	Skip backward	Skip backward	DVR skip backward *2	DVR skip backward *2	Skip backward	Skip backward	Direction A	
⏭	Skip forward	Skip forward	Skip forward	Skip forward	Skip forward	DVR skip forward *2	DVR skip forward *2	Skip forward	Skip forward	Direction B	
[6] 1-9, 0, +10	Numeric buttons	Numeric buttons	Numeric buttons	Numeric buttons	Numeric buttons	Numeric buttons	Numeric buttons	Numeric buttons	Numeric buttons	Numeric buttons	Numeric buttons
[7] MENU, SRCH MODE	Menu	Menu		Menu		Menu					Search mode
[8] DISPLAY	Display	Display	Display	Display	Display	Display	Display	Display	Display	Display	Display
[9] ENT	Index	Index	Chapter/ time	Index	Enter	Enter	Enter	Index	Index		Enter
[10] AUDIO	Audio	Audio	Audio	Audio							

### Notes

\*1 This button is operational only when the original remote control supplied with the component has a power button.

\*2 These buttons operate your video recorder (DVD recorder, etc.) only when you set the appropriate remote control code for DVR (page 83).

## ■ Selecting a component to be controlled

You can select a component to be controlled independently of the input source selected with the input selector buttons (③).

Press **⑤ SELECT**  $\triangleleft/\triangleright$  repeatedly to select the desired component.

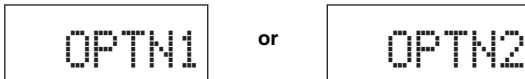
The name of the component to be controlled appears in the display window (④) on the remote control.



## ■ Controlling optional components (Option mode)

“OPTN1” and “OPTN2” are optional component control areas that can be programmed with remote control functions independently from any input source. These areas are useful for programming commands that are to be used only as a part of a macro function or for components that do not have a valid remote control code.

To select the option mode, press **⑤ SELECT**  $\triangleleft/\triangleright$  repeatedly until “OPTN1” or “OPTN2” appears in the display window (④) on the remote control.



### Note

You cannot set a remote control code for the optional areas. See page 85 to program buttons operated within this component control area.

## Setting remote control codes

You can control other components by setting the appropriate remote control codes. Codes can be set up for each input area. For a complete list of available remote control codes, refer to “List of remote control codes” at the end of this manual.

The following table shows the default component (Library: component category) and the remote control code for each control area.

### Remote control code default settings

Control area	Library (component category)	Manufacturer	Default code
MULTI	DVD	Yamaha	04306
V-AUX	—	—	—
PHONO	—	—	—
DOCK	SOURCE	Yamaha	00012
BD HD DVD	BD	Yamaha	04706
DVD	DVD	Yamaha	04306
CD	CD	Yamaha	01205
MD CD-R	CD-R	Yamaha	01405
CBL SAT	—	—	—
TV	—	—	—
DVR	DVR	Yamaha	00707
VCR	—	—	—
TUNER	SOURCE	Yamaha	00012
<b>A</b>	—	—	—
<b>B</b>	—	—	—
USB	SOURCE	Yamaha	00012

### Note

You may not be able to operate your Yamaha component even if a Yamaha remote control code is preset as listed above. In this case, try setting another Yamaha remote control code.

## 1 Check the remote control code for your component in advance.

For a complete list of available remote control codes, see “List of remote control codes” at the end of this manual.

## 2 Set the operation mode selector on the remote control to **⑮ SOURCE**.

If you want to set the remote control code for “TV”, set the operation mode selector to **⑮ TV**.

### 3 Press **Ⓜ** **SETUP** using a ballpoint pen or similar object.

“SETUP” appears in the display window (④) on the remote control.



#### Note

In the “SETUP” menu, complete each of the operations within 30 seconds. Otherwise, the remote control automatically exits from the “SETUP” menu.

### 4 Press **Ⓜ** **▲** / **▼** repeatedly to select “P-SET” and then press **Ⓜ** **ENTER**.

The remote control enters the preset mode. “P-SET” and name of the currently selected control area appears in the display window (④) alternately.



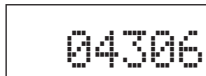
### 5 Press an input selector button (③) or **Ⓜ** **SELECT** **<** / **>** repeatedly to select the control area you want to customize.

If you selected “TV” in step 2, skip this step.



### 6 Press **Ⓜ** **ENTER**.

The current code setting appears.



### 7 Press the numeric buttons (⑪) to enter the five-digit remote control code for your component.

### 8 Press **Ⓜ** **ENTER** to set the number.

“OK” appears in the display window (④) if setting was successful.

“NG” appears in the display window (④) if the setting was unsuccessful. In this case, start over from step 5.




If you continuously want to set up another code for another control area, repeat steps 5 through 8.

### 9 Press **Ⓜ** **SETUP** again to exit from the “SETUP” mode.

### 10 Press **Ⓜ** **AV POWER** or **Ⓜ** **>** to confirm whether you can control your component using the remote control.



- If operation is not possible and the manufacturer of your component has more than one code, try each of them until you find the correct one.
- If you set “00012” as the remote control code of the selected control area, you can operate the currently selected internal source (DOCK, TUNER, or USB).

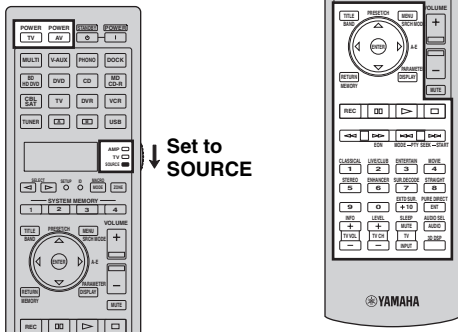
#### Notes

- “ERROR” appears in the display window (④) on the remote control if you press a button not indicated in the respective step, or when you press more than one button simultaneously.
- The supplied remote control does not contain all possible codes for commercially available audio and video components (including Yamaha components). If operation is not possible with any of the remote control codes, program the new remote control function using the learning feature (page 85) or use the remote control supplied with the component.
- Functions programmed using the learning mode take priority over remote control code functions.



## Programming codes from other remote controls

You can program remote control codes from other remote controls. Use the learning feature if you want to program functions not included in the basic operations covered by the remote control codes, or an appropriate remote control code is not available. You can program the function of other remote control to the buttons in the highlighted areas in the following illustration. The buttons can be programmed independently for each control area.



### Notes

- The remote control transmits infrared rays. If the other remote control also uses infrared rays, this remote control can learn most of its functions. However, you may not be able to program some special signals or extremely long transmissions.
- You cannot program the desired remote control code even if you select the buttons in the highlighted area in the above illustration depending on the selected control area and the assigned library.

- 1 Set the operation mode selector to **15 SOURCE** and then press an input selector button **3** to select the desired control area. If you want to program the remote control code for "TV", set the operation mode selector to **15 TV**.

### Note

Make sure that the operation mode selector is set to **15 SOURCE** or **15 TV**. When you set the operation mode selector to **15 AMP** and program a remote control codes from other remote controls, the programmed key cannot operate the amplifier function of this unit.

- 2 Press **16 SETUP** using a ballpoint pen or similar object.

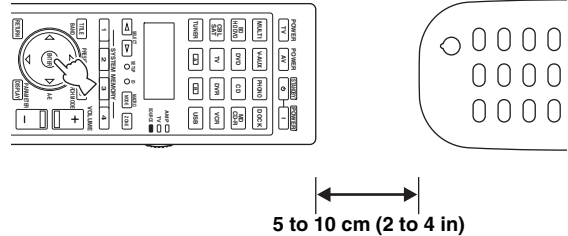
"SETUP" appears in the display window **4**.

- 3 Press **8**  $\Delta$  /  $\nabla$  repeatedly to select "LEARN" and then press **8 ENTER**.

- 4 Place this remote control about 5 to 10 cm (2 to 4 in) apart from the other remote control on a flat surface so that their infrared transmitters are aimed at each other and then press **8 ENTER**.

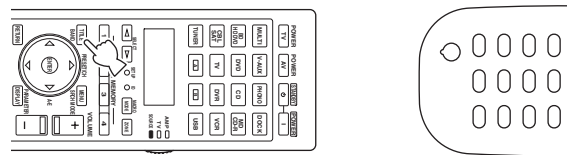
"L-KEY" appears in the display window **4**.

Other remote control



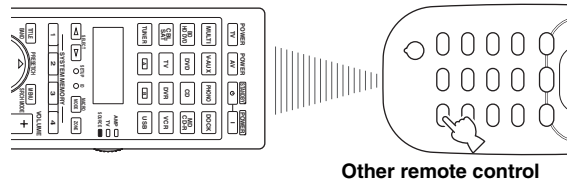
- 5 Press the button for which you want to program the new function.

"START" appears in the display window **4**.



- 6 Press and hold the button you want to program on the other remote control until "OK" appears in the display window **4**.

"NG" appears in the display window **4** if learning was unsuccessful. In this case, start over from step 4.



Other remote control



When you want to program another function, repeat steps 4 through 6.

## 7 Press **Ⓜ** **SETUP** again to exit the setup menu.

### Notes

- “ERROR” appears in the display window (④) on the remote control if you press a button not indicated in the respective step, or when you press more than one button simultaneously.
- This remote control can learn approximately 200 functions. However, depending on the signals learned, “FULL” may appear in the display before you program 200 functions. In this case, clear unnecessary programmed functions to make room for further learning (page 89).
- Learning may not be possible in the following cases:
  - when the batteries in the remote control for this unit or other components are weak.
  - when the remote control is exposed to direct sunlight.
  - when the function to be programmed is continuous or uncommon.

## Changing source names in the display window

You can change the name of the control area (input source) that appears in the display window (④) on the remote control.

### 1 Set the operation mode selector to **Ⓜ** **SOURCE** and then press an input selector button (③) to select the desired control area.

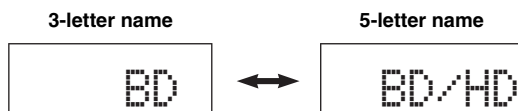
### 2 Press **Ⓜ** **SETUP** using a ballpoint pen or similar object.

“SETUP” appears in the display window.

### 3 Press **Ⓜ** **Δ** / **∇** repeatedly to select “RNAME” and then press **Ⓜ** **ENTER**.

### 4 Press **Ⓜ** **Δ** / **∇** repeatedly to select 3-letter name or 5-letter name you want to edit and then press **Ⓜ** **ENTER**.

Each control area has both 3-letter name and 5-letter name. You can rename the 3-letter name and 5-letter name independently.



### 5 Edit the name of the control area.

To locate the position to edit, press **Ⓜ** **◀** / **▶**.

To select a character, press **Ⓜ** **Δ** / **∇**.



Press **Ⓜ** **Δ** to change the character in the following order, or press **Ⓜ** **∇** to go in the reverse order: A to Z, a to z, 0 to 9, space, symbols (–, +, /, :).

### 6 Press **Ⓜ** **ENTER** to set the new name.

“OK” appears in the display window (④) on the remote control if renaming was successful.



When you want to rename the another control area, press the input selector button (③) or **Ⓜ** **SELECT** **◀** / **▶** repeatedly to select the desired control area and then press **Ⓜ** **ENTER** and then carry out the operations of steps 4 through 6.

### 7 Press **Ⓜ** **SETUP** again to exit the setup menu.

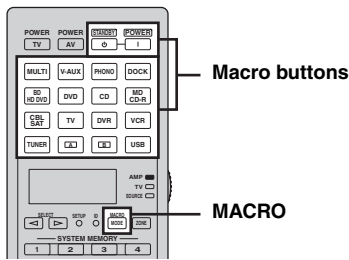
### Note

“ERROR” appears in the display window (④) on the remote control if you press a button not indicated in the respective step, or when you press more than one button simultaneously.

## Macro programming features

The macro programming feature makes it possible to perform a series of operations with the press of a single button. For example, when you want to play a CD, normally you would turn on the components, select the CD input, and press the play button to start playback. The macro programming feature lets you perform all of these operations simply by pressing the CD macro button. The buttons listed as macro buttons below are factory set with macro programs. You can also program your own macros (page 88).

### Recalling programmed macro-operations



#### 1 Press **MACRO** on the remote control.



#### 2 Press the desired macro button.

“M:the 3-letter name of the selected control area” (for example, “M:DVD”) appears in the display window (4), and this unit transmits the programmed functions. When you press **STANDBY** or **POWER**, “M:STB” or “M:PWR” appears in the display window (4), and this unit transmits the programmed functions.

#### 3 Press **MACRO** again to exit from the macro-operation mode.

#### Notes

- While the remote control is running a macro program (the transmission indicator flashes), it does not accept any other operation.
- Continue to aim the remote control at the component the macro is operating until the macro operation is complete.
- If you do not complete each of the operations within 30 seconds, this unit automatically exits from the macro-operation mode.

### Default macro functions

Pressing macro button	To automatically transmit these signals in order	
	First	Second
STANDBY ⏻	STANDBY ⏻	—
POWER ⏻	POWER TV ⏻	POWER (*1) TV ⏻
MULTI		MULTI
V-AUX		V-AUX
PHONO		PHONO
DOCK		DOCK
BD HD DVD		BD HD DVD
DVD		DVD
CD		CD
MD CD-R		MD CD-R
CBL SAT		CBL SAT
TV		TV
DVR		DVR
VCR		VCR
TUNER		TUNER (*2)
C		C
C		C
USB		USB

\*1 Set the appropriate remote control code for TV in advance (page 83).

\*2 This unit plays the last received station or selected contents before the unit was set in the standby mode.

## ■ Programming macro operations

You can program your own macro to transmit several remote control commands in sequence at the press of a button. Be sure to set up remote control codes or perform learning operations before programming the macro.

### Notes

- The default macro is not cleared when a new macro is programmed for a button. The default macro can be used again when the programmed macro is cleared.
- It is not possible to add a new signal (macro step) to the default macro. Programming a macro changes all macro contents.
- We do not recommend that you program continuous operations (for example, volume control) in a macro.

### 1 Press **Ⓜ** **SETUP** using a ballpoint pen or similar object.

“SETUP” appears in the display window (④).

### 2 Press **Ⓢ** / **Ⓜ** / **Ⓡ** repeatedly to select “MACRO” and then press **Ⓢ** **ENTER**.

### 3 Press the desired macro button you want to assign the macro program to and then press **Ⓢ** **ENTER**.

“M:the three-letter name of the selected macro button” (for example, “M:DVD”) and the name of the currently selected control area appears in the display window (④) alternately.

When you press **Ⓢ** **STANDBY** or **Ⓢ** **POWER**, “M:STB” or “M:PWR” and the name of the currently selected control area appears in the display window (④) alternately.

### 4 Press the buttons for the functions you want to include in the macro operation in sequence.

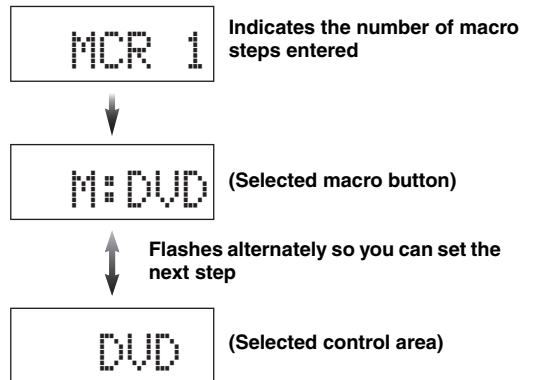
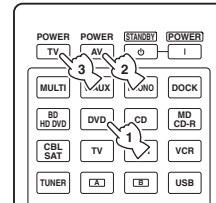
#### Example

Set the input source to DVD → Turn on the DVD player → Turn on the video monitor

Step 1 (“MCR1”): Press DVD.

Step 2 (“MCR2”): Press AV POWER.

Step 3 (“MCR3”): Press TV POWER.



### Notes

- To change the selected input area, press **Ⓢ** **SELECT** </>. Pressing the input selector buttons will program a macro step, whereas **Ⓢ** **SELECT** </> only changes the selected input area.
- The position of the operation mode selector (AMP/TV/SOURCE) affects the assigned function. When the operation mode selector is set to **Ⓢ** **AMP** or **Ⓢ** **TV**, the input source selectors do not function.

### 5 Press **Ⓢ** **MACRO** to confirm the program.

You can set up to 10 steps (10 functions). After you have set 10 steps, “FULL” appears and the remote control automatically exits from the macro programming mode.

### 6 Press **Ⓜ** **SETUP** again to exit from the setup mode.

#### Note

“ERROR” appears in the display window (④) if you press more than one button simultaneously.

## Clearing configurations

You can clear all changes made in each function set, such as learned functions, macros, renamed control area names and setup remote control ID.

### ■ Clearing function sets

**1 Press  $\text{\textcircled{16}}$  **SETUP** using a ballpoint pen or similar object.**

“SETUP” appears in the display window  $\text{\textcircled{4}}$ .

**2 Press  $\text{\textcircled{8}}$   $\Delta$  /  $\nabla$  repeatedly to select “CLEAR” and then press  $\text{\textcircled{8}}$  **ENTER**.**

**3 Press  $\text{\textcircled{8}}$   $\Delta$  /  $\nabla$  repeatedly to select the desired clear mode.**

Clear mode	Descriptions
L: DVD (etc.)	(L: Three-digit name of the selected control area) Clears all learned functions the respective control area. You can change the control area to be cleared by pressing the desired input selector button $\text{\textcircled{3}}$ or $\text{\textcircled{6}}$ <b>SELECT</b> $\triangleleft$ / $\triangleright$ repeatedly.
L: AMP	Sets all learned functions for controlling the amplifier functions to the initial factory settings. Set the operation mode selector to $\text{\textcircled{15}}$ <b>AMP</b> to select this clear mode.
L: TV	Clears all learned functions for TV control area. Set the operation mode selector to $\text{\textcircled{15}}$ <b>TV</b> to select this clear mode.
L: ALL	Clears all learned functions.
M: DVD (etc.)	(M: Name of the selected macro button) Clears the macro programmed for the selected macro button (page 88). The assigned macro to the selected macro button reverts to the initial factory macro. Press the desired macro button if you want to change the macro button you want to clear the programmed functions of.
M: ALL	Clears all programmed macros. The assigned macro to the selected macro button reverts to the initial factory macro.
RNAME	Set all the name of the control areas to the default settings.
FCTRY	Set all settings of the remote control to the initial factory settings.

**4 Press and hold  $\text{\textcircled{8}}$  **ENTER** for about 3 seconds.**

When the clearing is successful, “OK” appears in the display window  $\text{\textcircled{4}}$ .

### Notes

- “NG” appears in the display window  $\text{\textcircled{4}}$  if clearing was unsuccessful.
- “ERROR” appears in the display window  $\text{\textcircled{4}}$  if you press a button not indicated in the respective step, or if you press more than one button simultaneously.

**5 Press  $\text{\textcircled{16}}$  **SETUP** again to exit from the setup mode.**

### ■ Clearing a learned function

**1 Press  $\text{\textcircled{16}}$  **SETUP** using a ballpoint pen or similar object.**

“SETUP” appears in the display window  $\text{\textcircled{4}}$ .

**2 Press  $\text{\textcircled{8}}$   $\Delta$  /  $\nabla$  repeatedly to select “ERASE” and then press  $\text{\textcircled{8}}$  **ENTER**.**

**3 Set the operation mode selector to  $\text{\textcircled{15}}$  **SOURCE** and then press an input selector button  $\text{\textcircled{3}}$ .**

If you want to erase the function learned in the AMP or TV control area, set the operation mode selector to  $\text{\textcircled{15}}$  **AMP** or  $\text{\textcircled{15}}$  **TV**.

**4 Press  $\text{\textcircled{8}}$  **ENTER**.**

“E-KEY” appears in the display window  $\text{\textcircled{4}}$ .

**5 Press and hold the button you want to clear for about 3 seconds.**

If clearing is successful, “OK” appears in the display window  $\text{\textcircled{4}}$ .



- If you continuously want to clear another function, repeat step 3 through 5.
- Once you clear a learned function, the button reverts to the factory setting (or to the manufacturer setting if you have set remote control codes).

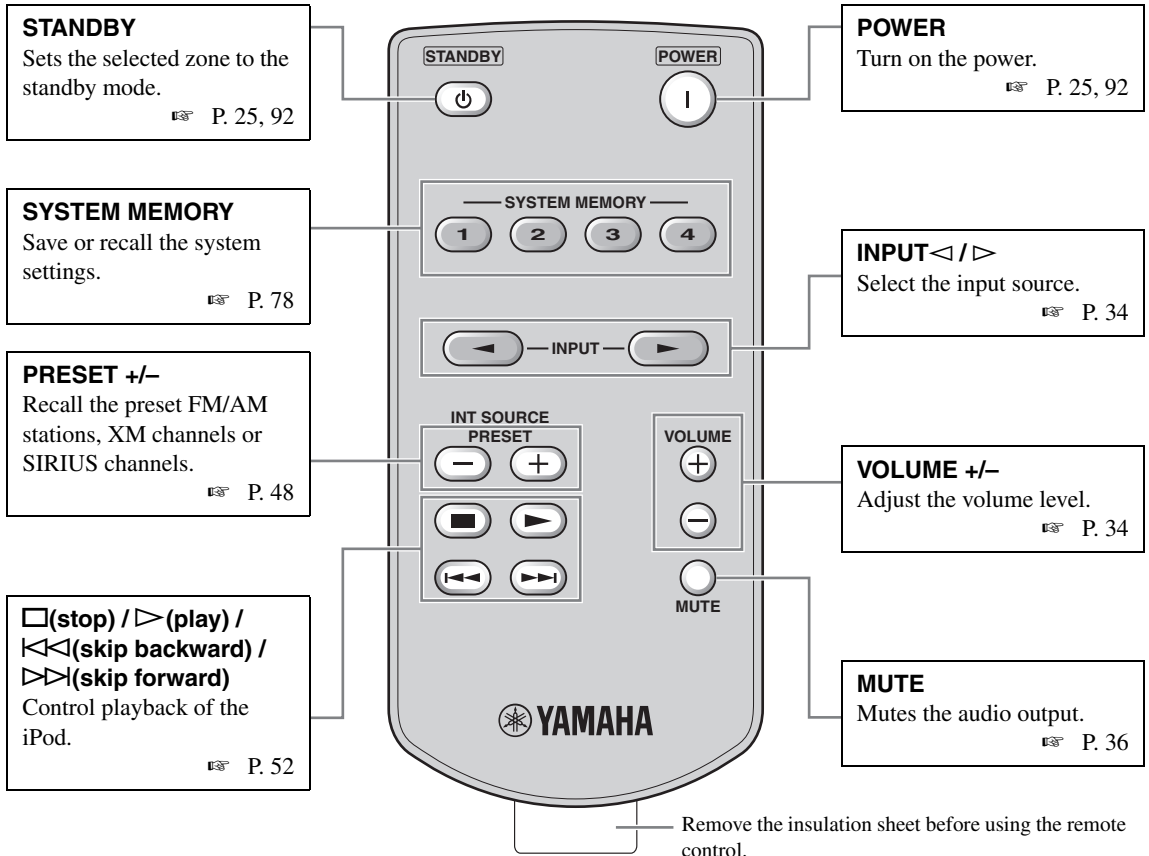
**6 Press  $\text{\textcircled{16}}$  **SETUP** again to exit from the setup mode.**

### Notes

- “NG” appears in the display window  $\text{\textcircled{4}}$  on the remote control if clearing was unsuccessful.
- “ERROR” appears in the display window  $\text{\textcircled{4}}$  if you press more than one button simultaneously.

## Simplified remote control

Use the supplied simplified remote control to make basic controls of this unit.



### ■ Setting the controlling zone of the simplified remote control

Use this feature to set the controlling zone (page 92) and remote control ID (page 94) of the simplified remote control.

#### Setting the remote control ID

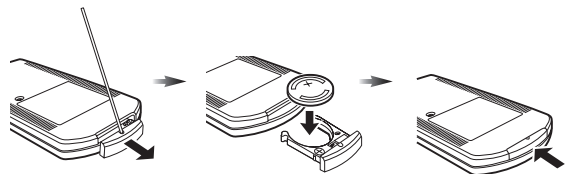
- ID1: Press and hold ◀◀ and 1 for 3 seconds.
- ID2: Press and hold ◀◀ and 2 for 3 seconds.

#### Setting the controlling zone

- Main zone: Press and hold ▶▶ and 1 for 3 seconds.
- Zone 2: Press and hold ▶▶ and 2 for 3 seconds.
- Zone 3: Press and hold ▶▶ and 3 for 3 seconds.

### ■ Replacing the battery in the simplified remote control

Change the battery when the operation range of the simplified remote control decreases.



Use a straight pin to remove the cover.

Replace the battery with a new CR2025 battery.

Close the cover.

#### Notes

- Insert the battery according to the polarity markings (+ and -).
- If the batteries run out, immediately remove them from the simplified remote control to prevent an explosion or acid leak.
- If a battery starts leaking, dispose of it immediately. Be careful not to let the leaking battery acid touch your skin or clothing.
- Before inserting new batteries, wipe the compartment clean.
- Dispose of batteries according to your regional regulations.

# Using multi-zone configuration

This unit allows you to configure a multi-zone audio system. The multi-zone configuration feature enables you to set this unit to reproduce separate input sources in the main zone, second zone (Zone 2) and third zone (Zone 3). You can control this unit from the second or third zone using the supplied remote control.

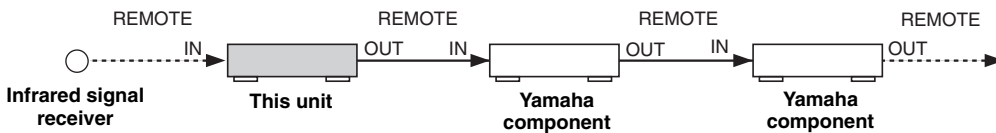
Only analog signals are sent to the second and third zones. Any source you want to listen to in the second zone and third zone must be connected to the analog AUDIO IN jacks of this unit.

## Connecting the Zone 2 and Zone 3 components

You need the following additional equipment to use the multi-zone functions of this unit:

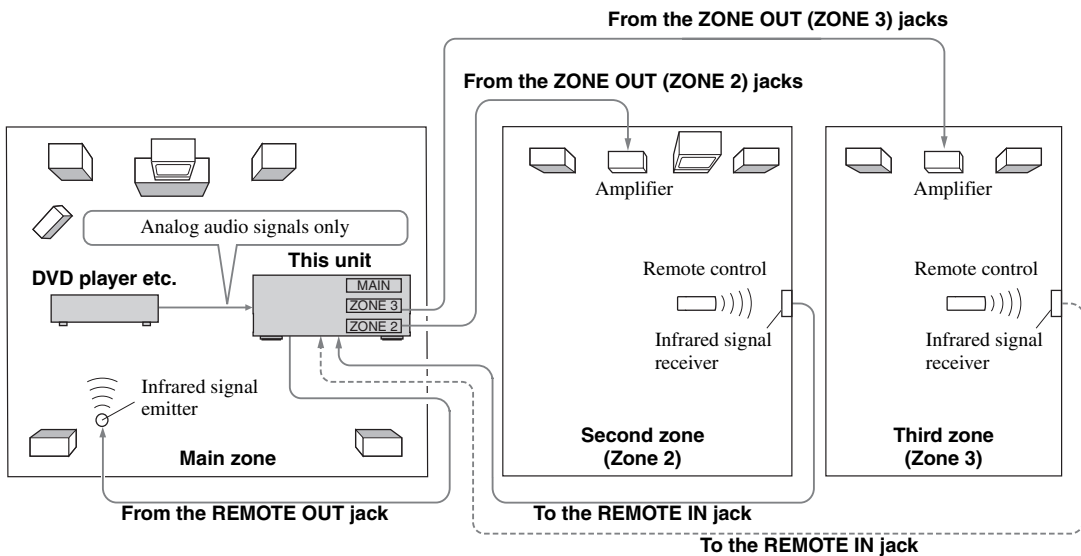
- An infrared signal receiver in the second zone and/or third zone.
- An infrared signal emitter in the main zone. This emitter transmits the infrared signals from the remote control via the infrared signal receiver in the second zone and/or third zone to a CD player or a DVD player, etc. in the main zone.
- An amplifier and speakers in the second zone and/or third zone.

- ☀
- Since there are many possible ways to connect and use this unit in a multi-zone configuration, we recommend that you consult with your nearest authorized Yamaha dealer or service center about the Zone 2 and Zone 3 connections that best meet your requirements.
  - Some Yamaha models are able to connect directly to the REMOTE jacks of this unit. If you own these products, you may not need to use an infrared signal emitter. Up to 6 Yamaha components can be connected as shown below.



### ■ Using external amplifiers

To use an external amplifier in the second zone and/or third zone, connect the external amplifier to ZONE OUT jacks and set "AMP" to "EXT" (page 77).



### Notes

- To avoid unexpected noise, DO NOT use the Zone 2/Zone 3 feature with CDs encoded in DTS.
- Adjust the the second zone and/or third zone volume by using the amplifier in each zone when "VOLUME" are set to "FIX" (page 77).

## ■ Using the internal amplifiers of this unit

### Important safety notice

The SP1 or SP2 speaker terminals of this Receiver should not be connected to a Passive Loudspeaker Selector Box or more than one loudspeaker per channel.

Connection to a Passive Loudspeaker Selector Box or multiple speakers per channel could create an abnormally low impedance load resulting in amplifier damage. See this owner's manual for correct usage.

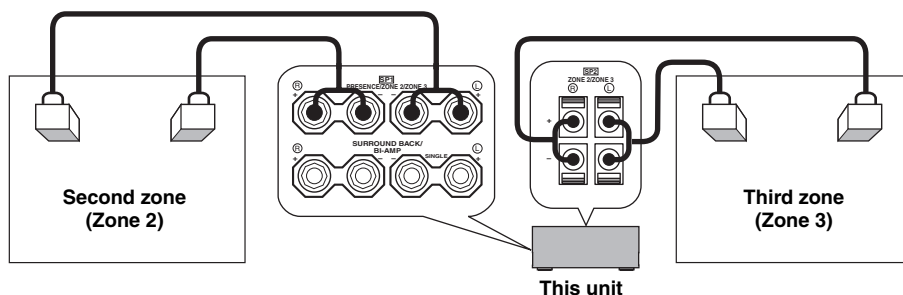
Compliance with minimum speaker impedance information for all channels must be maintained at all times. This information is found on the back panel of your Receiver.

### If you want to use one internal amplifier (SP1 or SP2) of this unit

Connect the Zone 2 or Zone 3 speakers directly to the SP1 or SP2 speaker terminals and set "AMP" to "[SP1]" or "[SP2]" (page 77).

### If you want to use two internal amplifiers (SP1 and SP2) of this unit

Connect the Zone 2 and Zone 3 speakers directly to the SP1 and SP2 speaker terminals and set "AMP" to "BOTH" (page 77).



## Controlling Zone 2 or Zone 3

You can select the zone you want to control by using the control buttons on the front panel or on the remote control.

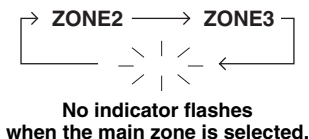
### ■ Basic operation

#### Front panel operations

**1** Press **ⓈZONE 2** or **ⓈZONE 3** on the front panel to individually turn on or off Zone 2 or Zone 3.

**2** Press **ⓈZONE CONTROLS** on the front panel repeatedly to select the zone you want to control.

Each time you press **ⓈZONE CONTROLS**, the front panel display changes as shown below, and the indicator for the currently selected zone flashes for approximately 10 seconds. However, no indicator flashes when the main zone is selected.



#### ZONE2

Controls the Zone 2 amplifier or tuner functions.

#### ZONE3

Controls the Zone 3 amplifier or tuner functions.



You must complete this step within 10 seconds while the selected zone flashes in the front panel display. Otherwise, the currently selected zone mode is automatically canceled.

**3** Perform the desired operation in the selected zone (page 93).



To turn off the desired zone, press **ⓈZONE 2** or **ⓈZONE 3** again.

#### Remote control operations

**1** Press **ⓈZONE** repeatedly to select the zone you want to control.

"MAIN", "ZONE 2", or "ZONE 3" indicator appears in the display window (④) on the remote control.





2 Press **Ⓜ POWER** to turn on the selected zone.

3 Perform the desired operation in the selected zone (page 93).



To turn off the desired zone, press **Ⓜ STANDBY**.

### ■ Selecting the input source of Zone 2 or Zone 3

Rotate the **Ⓢ INPUT** selector (or set the operation mode selector to **Ⓜ AMP** and then press one of the input selector buttons (**Ⓢ**)).

- Select “TUNER” as the input source to use the FM/AM tuning features (page 46) in the selected zone.
- Select “DOCK” as the input source to use the iPod features (page 52) or Bluetooth features (page 54) in the selected zone.
- Select “USB” as the input source to use the USB features (page 52) in the selected zone.

#### Note

The input sources are shared across all zones. You cannot select the same input source in multiple zones simultaneously.

### ■ Adjusting the volume level of Zone 2 or Zone 3

Rotate **Ⓢ VOLUME** (or press **Ⓢ VOLUME +/-**).



Press **Ⓜ MUTE** on the remote control to mute the sound output to the selected zone.

#### Note

When you use the external amplifiers in Zone 2 or Zone 3, **Ⓢ VOLUME +/-** can be used only when “VOLUME” is set to “VAR” in “ZONE SET” (page 77).

### ■ Adjusting the front speaker balance of Zone 2 or Zone 3

Press **Ⓢ TONE CONTROL** repeatedly to select “BALANCE” and then rotate the **Ⓢ PROGRAM** selector for adjustment.

### ■ Adjusting the tonal quality of Zone 2 or Zone 3

Press **Ⓢ TONE CONTROL** repeatedly to select the high-frequency response (TREBLE) or the low-frequency response (BASS) and then rotate the **Ⓢ PROGRAM** selector for adjustment.

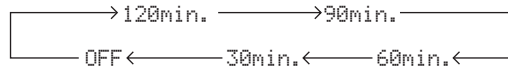
Control range: -10.0 dB to +10.0 dB

### ■ Setting the sleep timer for Zone 2 or Zone 3

Use this feature to turn off the desired zone after a certain amount of time.

Set the operation mode to **Ⓜ AMP** and then press **Ⓢ SLEEP** repeatedly to set the amount of time.

The sleep timer setting changes as shown below.



# Advanced setup

This unit has additional menus that are displayed in the front panel display. The advanced setup menu offers additional operations to adjust and customize the way this unit operates. Change the initial settings (indicated in bold under each parameter) to reflect the needs of your listening environment.

## Notes

- Only **MASTER ON/OFF**, **STRAIGHT** and the **PROGRAM** selector are effective while you are using the advanced setup menu.
- All the other operations cannot be made while you are using the advanced setup menu.
- The advanced setup menu is only available in the front panel display.

## Using the advanced setup menu

- 1 Press **MASTER ON/OFF** on the front panel to release it outward to the OFF position to turn off this unit.
- 2 Press and hold **STRAIGHT** and then press **MASTER ON/OFF** inward to the ON position to turn on this unit.  
This unit turns on, and “ADVANCED SETUP” appears in the front panel display.



- 3 Rotate the **PROGRAM** selector to select the parameter you want to adjust.
- 4 Press **STRAIGHT** repeatedly to change the selected parameter setting.
- 5 Press **MASTER ON/OFF** to release it outward to the OFF position to save the new setting and turn off this unit.



The settings you made are reflected next time you turn on this unit.

### Speaker impedance **SPEAKER IMP.**

Use this feature to set the speaker impedance of this unit so that it matches that of your speakers.

Choice	Descriptions
<b>8ΩMIN</b>	Select this setting to set the speaker impedance to 8 Ω. The impedance of each speaker must be 8 Ω or higher.
6ΩMIN	Select this setting to set the speaker impedance to 6 Ω. The impedance of each speaker must be 6 Ω or higher (front speakers only: 4 Ω or higher).

### Remote sensor **REMOTE SENSOR**

Use this feature to activate or deactivate the signal-receiving capability of the remote control sensor on the front panel of this unit.

Choice	Descriptions
<b>ON</b>	Select this setting if you want to activate the signal-receiving capability of the remote control sensor.
OFF	Select this setting if you want to deactivate the signal-receiving capability of the remote control sensor.

### Note

We recommend setting the parameter to “ON” in most cases.

### Wake on RS-232C access **RS-232C STANDBY**

Use this feature to set this unit to transmit data via the RS-232C interface when this unit is in the standby mode.

Choice	Functions
<b>YES</b>	Select this setting to set this unit to transmit data via the RS-232C interface.
NO	Select this setting to set this unit not to transmit data via the RS-232C interface.

Initial setting:

[U.S.A. and Canada models]: YES

[Other models]: NO

### Remote control ID setting **REMOTE CON AMP**

Use this feature to set the remote control ID of this unit for remote control recognition.

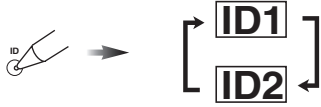
Choice	Descriptions
<b>ID1</b>	Select this setting when the ID of the remote control is set to “ID1”
ID2	Select this setting when the ID of the remote control is set to “ID2”

### Setting remote control ID

Use this feature to set the remote control ID. This feature is useful when you control multiple Yamaha AV receiver or amplifier with using the remote control.

Press **ⓂID** repeatedly using a ballpoint pen or similar object on the remote control to select the desired remote control ID.

Each time you press **ⓂID**, the remote control ID indicator changes as shown below.



To set the remote control ID of the simplified remote control, see page 94 for details.

### ■ Tuner frequency step **TUNER FRQ STEP** (Asia and General models only)

Use this feature to set the tuner frequency step according to the frequency spacing in your area.

Choice	Descriptions
AM10/ FM100	Select this setting for North, Central and South America.
<b>AM9/FM50</b>	Select this setting for all other countries.

### ■ Bi-amplifier mode **BI-AMP**

Use this feature to activate or deactivate the bi-amplifier function.

Choice	Descriptions
ON	Select this setting if you want to activate the bi-amplifier function.
<b>OFF</b>	Select this setting if you want to deactivate the bi-amplifier function.

#### Note

When “BI-AMP” is set to “ON”, the SURROUND BACK terminals cannot be used to connect surround back speakers in that the terminals are already used for the bi-amplifier connection (page 14).

### ■ Parameter initialization **INITIALIZE**

Use this feature to reset the parameters of this unit to the initial factory settings. You can select the category of parameters to be initialized.

Choice	Descriptions
DSP PARAM	Select this setting to initialize all the parameters of the sound field parameters (page 59).
VIDEO	Select this setting to initialize all the parameters in “VIDEO MENU” and “OSD SHIFT” and “GRAY BACK” in “DISPLAY SET”.
ALL	Select this setting to initialize all the parameters of this unit.
<b>CANCEL</b>	Select this setting to cancel the initialization procedure.



To initialize the parameters of each sound field program, use “INITIALIZE” in the sound field program menu (page 59).

### ■ HDMI monitor check **MONITOR CHECK**

Use this feature to activate or deactivate the monitor check function of this unit.

Choice	Descriptions
<b>YES</b>	This unit receives the information of the available video signal resolutions from the video monitor connected via HDMI and you can only select the resolutions supported by the video monitor in “HDMI RES.” (page 73).
SKIP	You can select any resolution in “HDMI RES.” (page 73).

# Troubleshooting

Refer to the table below when this unit does not function properly. If the problem you are experiencing is not listed below or if the instruction below does not help, turn off this unit, disconnect the power cable, and contact the nearest authorized Yamaha dealer or service center.

## ■ General

Problem	Cause	Remedy	See page
<b>This unit fails to turn on or enters the standby mode soon after the power is turned on.</b>	The power cable is not connected or the plug is not completely inserted.	Connect the power cable firmly.	—
	The speaker impedance setting is incorrect.	Set the speaker impedance to match your speakers.	25
	The protection circuitry has been activated.	Make sure that all speaker wire connections on this unit and on all speakers are secure and that the wire for each connection does not touch anything other than its respective connection.	12
	This unit has been exposed to a strong external electric shock (such as lightning or strong static electricity).	Turn off this unit, disconnect the power cable, plug it back in after 30 seconds and then use it normally.	—
<b>No sound.</b>	Incorrect input or output cable connections.	Connect the cables properly. If the problem persists, the cables may be defective.	18-23
	Audio input jack select is set to “HDMI”, “COAX/OPT” or “ANALOG”.	Set the audio input jack select to “AUTO”.	35
	Audio input jack select is set to “ANALOG” while the input source component outputs digital audio signals.	Set the audio input jack select to “AUTO” or “COAX/OPT”.	35
	No appropriate input source has been selected.	Select an appropriate input source with the <b>ⒸINPUT</b> selector (or the input selector buttons (Ⓒ)).	34, 35
	Speaker connections are not secure.	Secure the connections.	12
	The volume is turned down or muted.	Turn up the volume.	—
	Signals this unit cannot reproduce are being input from a source component, such as a CD-ROM.	Play a source whose signals can be reproduced by this unit.	—
	The HDMI components connected to this unit do not support the HDCP copy protection standards.	Connect HDMI components that support the HDCP copy protection standards.	16

Problem	Cause	Remedy	See page
<b>No picture.</b>	The output and input for the picture are connected to different types of video jacks.	Set "VIDEO CONV." to "ON" or connect your source components in the same way as you connect your video monitor to this unit.	72
	1080p-resolution analog video signals are only output at the COMPONENT VIDEO MONITOR OUT jacks.	Connect your video monitor to the COMPONENT VIDEO MONITOR OUT jacks.	18
	480p-, 576p-, 1080i- and 720p-resolution video signals cannot be output at the S VIDEO and VIDEO MONITOR OUT jacks.	Connect your video monitor to the HDMI OUT or COMPONENT VIDEO MONITOR OUT jacks.	—
	This unit outputs the video signals are not supported on the video monitor connected to the HDMI OUT jack.	Select "INITIALIZE" in "VIDEO" to reset the video parameters.	95
		Set "MONITOR CHECK" to "YES".	95
	Pure Direct mode is active.	Turn off the Pure Direct mode.	45
<b>Short message displays do not appear on the video monitor.</b>	Non-standard video signals are input.	Set "MODE" in "PURE DIRECT" to "AUDIO+VIDEO".	72
		"SHORT MESSAGE" is set to "OFF".	Set "SHORT MESSAGE" to "ON".
	"GRAY BACK" is set to "OFF".	Set "GRAY BACK" to "AUTO".	75
	"VIDEO CONV." is set to "OFF".	Set "VIDEO CONV." to "ON".	72
	The signals input at the HDMI input jacks are being output at the HDMI OUT jack.		
<b>The sound suddenly goes off.</b>	The protection circuitry has been activated because of a short circuit, etc.	Check that the speaker impedance setting is correct.	25, 94
		Check that the speaker wires are not touching each other and then turn this unit back on.	—
	The sleep timer has turned off this unit.	Turn on this unit, and play the source again.	—
<b>Sound is heard from the speaker on one side only.</b>	Incorrect cable connections.	Connect the cables properly. If the problem persists, the cables may be defective.	12
	The speaker level settings are incorrect.	Adjust "LEVEL" settings.	68
<b>Only the center speaker outputs substantial sound.</b>	When playing a monaural source with a CINEMA DSP program, the source signal is directed to the center channel, and the front and surround speakers output effect sounds.		
<b>No sound is heard from the center speaker.</b>	"CENTER SP" in "CONFIG" is set to "NONE".	Set "CENTER SP" to "SMALL" or "LARGE".	67
<b>No sound is heard from the presence speakers.</b>	This unit is in the "STRAIGHT" mode.	Press <b>Ⓢ</b> STRAIGHT to turn off the "STRAIGHT" mode.	44
	You are using a source or program combination that does not output sound from all channels.	Try another sound field program.	34

Problem	Cause	Remedy	See page
<b>No sound is heard from the surround speakers.</b>	"SUR. L/R SP" in "CONFIG" is set to "NONE".	Set "SUR. L/R SP" to "SMALL" or "LARGE".	67
	This unit is in the "STRAIGHT" mode and a monaural source is being played back.	Press <b>STRAIGHT</b> to turn off the "STRAIGHT" mode.	44
	The surround speakers are connected to the SURROUND BACK speaker terminals.	Connect the surround speakers to the SURROUND speaker terminals.	44
<b>No sound is heard from the subwoofer.</b>	"LFE/BASS OUT" in "CONFIG" is set to "FRONT" when a Dolby Digital or DTS signal is being played.	Set "LFE/BASS OUT" to "SWFR" or "BOTH".	67
	"LFE/BASS OUT" in "CONFIG" is set to "SWFR" or "FRONT" when a 2-channel source is being played.	Set "LFE/BASS OUT" to "BOTH".	67
	The source does not contain low-frequency signals.		
<b>No sound is heard from the surround back speakers.</b>	"SUR.B L/R SP" is set to "NONE".	Check whether "SUR. L/R SP" is set to "SMALL" or "LARGE" and configure "SUR.B L/R SP" properly.	67, 68
	While this unit is in the CINEMA DSP 3D mode, no sound is output at the surround back speakers.		
<b>The audio input sources cannot be played in the desired digital audio signal format (Desired input source indicator or decoder indicator in the front panel display does not light up).</b>	The connected component is not set to output the desired digital audio signals.	Make an appropriate setting following the operating instructions for your component.	—
	Audio input jack select is set to "ANALOG".	Set the audio input jack select to "AUTO".	35
<b>A humming sound is heard.</b>	Incorrect cable connections.	Connect the audio cables firmly. If the problem persists, the cables may be defective.	—
	No connection from the turntable to the GND terminal.	Connect the grounding cable of the turntable to the GND terminal of this unit.	21
<b>The volume level is low while a record is being played.</b>	The record is being played on a turntable with an MC cartridge.	Connect your turntable to this unit through an MC-head amplifier.	21
<b>The volume level cannot be increased, or the sound is distorted.</b>	The component connected to the AUDIO OUT (REC) jacks of this unit is turned off.	Turn on the power of the component.	—
<b>A source cannot be recorded by the recording component.</b>	The audio source connected to the MULTI CH INPUT jacks of this unit cannot be recorded.		
	A given input source is not output at the same output channel (e.g. DVR IN to DVR OUT).	Connect the recording component to another channel that is not being used for connecting the source component.	20
	You are trying to record a DTS source. (DTS signal is a digital bitstream. Attempting to record the DTS bitstream digitally will result in noise being recorded.)	Make a setting so that the analog signal will be output from your DTS-compatible player and then connect the DTS-compatible player to the AUDIO IN jacks while the recording component is connected to the analog AUDIO OUT (DVR, VCR or MD/CD-R) jacks.	20

Problem	Cause	Remedy	See page
<b>An audio source cannot be recorded by the digital recording component connected to the DIGITAL OUTPUT jacks.</b>	The audio source component is not connected to the DIGITAL INPUT jacks.	Connect the audio source component to the DIGITAL INPUT jacks.	20
	Some components cannot records Dolby Digital or DTS sources.		
	You are trying to record an audio source input at the DOCK terminal by the digital recording component connected to the DIGITAL OUTPUT jacks.	Connect the recording component to the analog AUDIO OUT (DVR, VCR or MD/CD-R) jacks.	20
<b>An audio source cannot be recorded by the analog recording component connected to the analog AUDIO OUT (DVR, VCR or MD/CD-R) jacks.</b>	The audio source component is not connected to the analog AUDIO IN jacks.	Connect the audio source component to the AUDIO IN jacks.	20
<b>Recorded materials sound differently.</b>	The settings made on this unit (such as tonal quality, volume level and sound field programs) do not affect recorded material.		
<b>A video source cannot be recorded by the recording component.</b>	"VIDEO CONV." is set to "ON".	While "VIDEO CONV." is set to "ON", video signals are output only at the MONITOR OUT jacks. To record a video source by the recording component, set "VIDEO CONV." to "OFF" and make the same type of video connections between each component (e.g. VCR IN (S VIDEO) to DVR OUT (S VIDEO)).	20, 72
<b>The sound field parameters and some other settings of this unit cannot be changed.</b>	"MEMORY GUARD" in "SET MENU" is set to "ON".	Set "MEMORY GUARD" to "OFF".	76
<b>This unit does not operate properly.</b>	The internal microcomputer has been frozen by an external electric shock (such as lightning or excessive static electricity) or by a power supply with low voltage.	Disconnect the power cable from the AC wall outlet and then plug it in again after about 30 seconds.	—
<b>"CHECK SP WIRES" appears in the front panel display.</b>	Speaker cables are short-circuited.	Make sure all speaker cables are connected correctly.	12
<b>There is noise interference from digital or radio frequency equipment.</b>	This unit is too close to the digital or high-frequency equipment.	Move this unit further away from such equipment.	—
<b>The picture is disturbed.</b>	The video source uses scrambled or encoded signals to prevent dubbing.		
<b>This unit suddenly enters the standby mode.</b>	The internal temperature becomes too high and the overheat protection circuitry has been activated.	Wait about 1 hour for this unit to cool down and then turn it back on.	—

■ HDMI

Problem	Cause	Remedy	See page
<b>No picture or sound.</b>	The number of the connected HDMI components is over the limit.	Reduce the number of the connected HDMI components.	—
	HDCP authentication failed.	Check that the connected HDMI components support the HDCP copy protection standards.	—

■ Tuner (FM/AM)

Problem	Cause	Remedy	See page	
<b>FM</b>	<b>FM stereo reception is noisy.</b>	The characteristics of FM stereo broadcasts may cause this problem when the transmitter is too far away or the antenna input is poor.	Check the antenna connections.	23
			Try using a high-quality directional FM antenna.	—
			Use the manual tuning method.	46
	<b>There is distortion, and clear reception cannot be obtained even with a good FM antenna.</b>	There is multi-path interference.	Adjust the antenna position to eliminate multi-path interference.	—
	<b>The desired station cannot be tuned into with the automatic tuning method.</b>	The signal is too weak.	Use a high-quality directional FM antenna.	—
Use the manual tuning method.			46	
<b>Previously preset stations can no longer be tuned into.</b>	This unit has been disconnected for a long period.	Preset the stations again.	47	
<b>AM</b>	<b>The desired station cannot be tuned into with the automatic tuning method.</b>	The signal is weak or the antenna connections are loose.	Tighten the AM loop antenna connections and orient it for the best reception.	23
			Use the manual tuning method.	46
	<b>There are continuous crackling and hissing noises.</b>	Supplied AM loop antenna is not connected.	Connect the AM loop antenna correctly even if you use an outdoor antenna.	23
		Noises can result from lightning, fluorescent lamps, motors, thermostats and other electrical equipment.	Use an outdoor antenna and a ground wire. This will help somewhat, but it is difficult to eliminate all noise.	23
	<b>There are buzzing and whining noises.</b>	A TV set is being used nearby.	Move this unit away from the TV set.	—



■ Remote control

Problem	Cause	Remedy	See page
<b>The remote control does not work or function properly.</b>	Wrong distance or angle.	The remote control will function within a maximum range of 6 m (20 ft) and no more than 30 degrees off-axis from the front panel.	27
	Direct sunlight or lighting (from an inverter type of fluorescent lamp, etc.) is striking the remote control sensor of this unit.	Reposition this unit.	—
	The batteries are weak.	Replace all batteries.	4
	The operation mode selector is set incorrectly.	Set the operation mode selector correctly. When operating this unit, set it to the <b>AMP</b> position. When operating the component selected by the input selector button, set it to the <b>SOURCE</b> position. When operating the TV set in the <b>TV</b> area, set it to the <b>TV</b> position.	—
	The control zone setting is incorrect.	Select the zone you want to control.	92
	The remote control code is not correctly set.	Set the remote control code correctly using “List of remote control codes” at the end of this manual.	83
		Try setting another code of the same manufacturer using “List of remote control codes” at the end of this manual.	83
	The remote control ID of the remote control and this unit do not match.	Match the remote control ID of this unit and the remote control.	94
Even if the remote control code is correctly set, there are some models that do not respond to the remote control.	Program the necessary functions independently into the programmable buttons using the Learn feature.	85	
<b>The remote control does not learn new functions.</b>	The batteries of this remote control and/or the other remote control are too weak.	Replace the batteries.	4
	The distance between the two remote controls is too much or too little.	Place the remote controls at the proper distance.	85
	The signal coding or modulation of the other remote control is not compatible with this remote control.	Learning is not possible.	—
	Memory capacity is full.	Delete other unnecessary functions to make room for the new functions.	89

■ iPod

**Note**

In case of a transmission error without a status message appearing in the front panel and in the OSD, check the connection of your iPod (page 22).

Status message	Cause	Remedy	See page
Loadin9...	This unit is in the middle of recognizing the connection with your iPod. This unit is in the middle of acquiring song lists from your iPod.		
Connect error	There is a problem with the signal path from your iPod to this unit.	Turn off this unit and reconnect the Yamaha iPod universal dock to the DOCK terminal of this unit. Try resetting your iPod.	22 —
Unknown iPod	The iPod being used is not supported by this unit.	This unit supports iPod touch, iPod (Click Wheel, including iPod classic), iPod nano and iPod mini.	—
iPod connected	Your iPod is properly stationed in a Yamaha iPod universal dock (such as YDS-11, sold separately) connected to the DOCK terminal of this unit, and the connection between your iPod and this unit is complete.		
Disconnected	Your iPod was removed from a Yamaha iPod universal dock (such as YDS-11, sold separately) connected to the DOCK terminal of this unit.	Station your iPod back in a Yamaha iPod universal dock (such as YDS-11, sold separately) connected to the DOCK terminal of this unit.	22
Unable to Play	This unit cannot play back the songs currently stored on your iPod.	Check that the songs currently stored on your iPod are playable. Store some other playable music files on your iPod.	— —

■ Bluetooth

Status message	Cause	Remedy	See page
Searching...	The Bluetooth receiver and the Bluetooth component is in the middle of the pairing. The Bluetooth receiver and the Bluetooth component is in the middle of establishing the connection.		
Completed	The paring is completed.		
Canceled	The paring is canceled.		
BT connected	The connection between the Yamaha Bluetooth wireless audio receiver (such as YBA-10, sold separately) and the Bluetooth component is established.		
Disconnected	The Bluetooth component is disconnected from the Yamaha Bluetooth wireless audio receiver (such as YBA-10, sold separately).		
No BT receiver	The Bluetooth receiver is not connected to the DOCK terminal.	Connect the Yamaha Bluetooth wireless audio receiver (such as YBA-10, sold separately) to the DOCK terminal.	22

■ USB

Problem	Cause	Remedy	See page
<b>“Disconnected” is displayed even when a USB device is present.</b>	This unit recognized the USB device as an illegal device.	Turn this unit off then on again.	55
<b>The music files and directories in the USB device cannot be viewed.</b>	The music files and directories are placed in locations other than the FAT area.	Place music files and directories in the FAT area.	—
	You are attempting to browse directory hierarchies of over 8 levels or a directory with more than 500 files.	Modify the data structure on your USB device.	—
<b>The USB device cannot be recognized.</b>	The connected USB device is other than a USB mass storage class USB memory device or USB portable audio player.	This unit can recognize only a USB mass storage class USB memory device or USB portable audio player. Also note that it cannot recognize certain USB devices even when they are devices as described above.	55
		Some devices may become easier to recognize when they are inserted before turning this unit on.	55
<b>This unit plays back an item different from what you selected.</b>	"SHUFFLE" is set to "ON".	Set "SHUFFLE" to "OFF".	56
<b>This unit does not recall the correct item by using numeric buttons (1-8).</b>	The connected USB device is incorrect.	Connect the USB device that stores the preset item.	56
	The directory that stores the selected item is changed.	Preset the desired item to the numeric button (1-8) again.	56

Status message	Cause	Remedy	See page
Please wait	This unit is in the middle of recognizing the connection with your USB memory device or USB portable audio player.	This is not a system malfunction. Wait for a while.	—
Disconnected	Your USB memory device or USB portable audio player has been disconnected from the USB port of this unit.	Check the connection between this unit and your USB memory device or USB portable audio player.	—
	There is a problem with the signal path from your USB memory device or USB portable audio player to this unit.	Turn off this unit and reconnect your USB memory device or USB portable audio player to the USB port of this unit.	25
		Try resetting your USB memory device or USB portable audio player.	—
Access error	This unit cannot access your USB memory device or USB portable audio player.	Try another USB memory device or USB portable audio player.	—
	There is a problem with the signal path from your USB memory device or USB portable audio player to this unit.	Turn off this unit and reconnect your USB memory device or USB portable audio player to the USB port of this unit.	25
		Try resetting your USB memory device or USB portable audio player.	—
Empty Memory!	No items are assigned to the selected numeric button.	Assign the desired item to the numeric button.	56
Not found!	This unit cannot find the assigned item for the selected numeric button.	Connect the USB device that stores the preset item.	56
		Preset the desired item to the numeric button (1-8) again.	56

ADDITIONAL  
INFORMATION

English

## ■ AUTO SETUP

### Before AUTO SETUP

Error message	Cause	Remedy	See page
Connect MIC!	Optimizer microphone is not connected.	Connect the supplied optimizer microphone to the OPTIMIZER MIC jack on the front panel.	29
Unplug HP!	Headphones are connected.	Unplug the headphones.	—
Memory Guard!	The parameters of this unit are protected.	Set "MEMORY GUARD" to "OFF".	76

### During AUTO SETUP

Error message	Cause	Remedy	See page
E-1:NO FRONT SP	Front L/R channel signals are not detected.	Check the front L/R speaker connections.	12
E-2:NO SUR. SP	A surround channel signal is not detected.	Check the surround speaker connections.	12
E-3:NO PRNS SP	A presence channel signal is not detected.	Check the presence speaker connections.	12
E-4:SBR→SBL	Only right surround back channel signal is detected.	Connect the surround back speaker to the SURROUND BACK (SINGLE) speaker terminal if you only have one surround back speaker.	12
E-5:NOISY	Background noise is too loud.	Try running "AUTO SETUP" in a quiet environment.  Turn off noisy electric equipment like air conditioners or move them away from the optimizer microphone.	—  —
E-6:CHECK SUR.	Surround back speakers are connected, though surround L/R speakers are not.	Connect surround speakers when you use surround back speakers.	13
E-7:NO MIC	The optimizer microphone was unplugged during the "AUTO SETUP" procedure.	Connect the supplied optimizer microphone to the OPTIMIZER MIC jack on the front panel.	29
E-8:NO SIGNAL	The optimizer microphone does not detect test tones.	Check the microphone setting.  Check the speaker connections and placement.  The optimizer microphone or OPTIMIZER MIC jack may be defective. Contact the nearest Yamaha dealer or service center.	29  12  —
E-9:USER CANCEL	The "AUTO SETUP" procedure was cancelled due to user activity.	Run "AUTO SETUP" again.	29
E-10:INTERNAL ERROR	An internal error occurred.	Run "AUTO SETUP" again.	29

### After AUTO SETUP

Warning message	Cause	Remedy	See page
W-1:OUT OF PHASE	Speaker polarity is not correct. This message may appear depending on the speakers even when the speakers are connected correctly.	Check the speaker connections for proper polarity (+ or -).	12
W-2:OVER 24m (80ft)	The distance between the speaker and the listening position is over 24 m (80 ft).	Bring the speaker closer to the listening position.	—

W-3: LEVEL ERROR	The difference of volume level among speakers is excessive.	Readjust the speaker installation so that all speakers are set in locations with similar conditions.	—
		Check the speaker connections.	12
		Use speakers of similar quality.	—
		Adjust the output volume of the subwoofer.	29

**Notes**

- If the “ERROR” or “WARNING” screens appears, check the cause of the problem, then run “AUTO SETUP” again.
- If warning message “W-2” or “W-3” appears, the adjustments are made, however the adjustment may not be optimal.
- Depending on the speakers, warning message “W-1” may appears even if the speaker connections are correct.
- If error message “E-10” occurs repeatedly, contact a qualified Yamaha service center.

# Resetting the system

Use this feature to reset all the parameters of this unit to the initial factory settings.

## Notes

- This procedure completely resets all the parameters of this unit including the “SET MENU” parameters.
- The initial factory settings are activated next time you turn on this unit.



To cancel the initialization procedure at any time without making any changes, press **Ⓐ MASTER ON/OFF** on the front panel to release it outward to the OFF position.

---

**1** Press **Ⓐ MASTER ON/OFF** on the front panel to release it outward to the OFF position to turn off this unit.

---

**2** Press and hold **Ⓞ STRAIGHT** and then press **Ⓐ MASTER ON/OFF** inward to the ON position to turn on this unit.

This unit turns on, and “ADVANCED SETUP” appears in the front panel display.



---

**3** Rotate the **Ⓝ PROGRAM** selector to select “INITIALIZE”.



---

**4** Press **Ⓞ STRAIGHT** repeatedly to select “ALL”.



Select “CANCEL” to cancel the initialization procedure without making any changes.

---

**5** Press **Ⓐ MASTER ON/OFF** to release it outward to the OFF position to confirm your selection and turn off this unit.

## ■ Audio and video synchronization (lip sync)

Lip sync, an abbreviation for lip synchronization, is a technical term that involves both a problem and a capability of maintaining audio and video signals synchronized during post-production and transmission. Whereas the audio and video latency requires complex end-user adjustments, HDMI version 1.3 incorporates an automatic audio and video syncing capability that allows devices to perform this synchronization automatically and accurately without user interaction.

## ■ Bi-amplification connection

A bi-amplification connection uses two amplifiers for a speaker. One amplifier is connected to the woofer section of a loudspeaker while the other is connected to the combined mid and tweeter section. With this arrangement each amplifier operates over a restricted frequency range. This restricted range presents each amplifier with a much simpler job and each amplifier is less likely to influence the sound in some way. The internal crossover of the speaker consists of a LPF (low pass filter) and a HPF (high pass filter). As its name implies, the LPF passes frequencies below a cutoff and rejects frequencies above the cutoff frequency. Likewise, the HPF passes frequencies above its cutoff.

## ■ Component video signal

With the component video signal system, the video signal is separated into the Y signal for the luminance and the Pb and Pr signals for the chrominance. Color can be reproduced more faithfully with this system because each of these signals is independent. The component signal is also called the “color difference signal” because the luminance signal is subtracted from the color signal. A monitor with component input jacks is required in order to output component signals.

## ■ Composite video signal

With the composite video signal system, the video signal is composed of three basic elements of a video picture: color, brightness and synchronization data. A composite video jack on a video component transmits these three elements combined.

## ■ Deep Color

Deep Color refers to the use of various color depths in displays, up from the 24-bit depths in previous versions of the HDMI specification. This extra bit depth allows HDTVs and other displays go from millions of colors to billions of colors and eliminate on-screen color banding for smooth tonal transitions and subtle gradations between colors. The increased contrast ratio can represent many times more shades of gray between black and white. Also Deep Color increases the number of available colors within the boundaries defined by the RGB or YcbCr color space.

## ■ Dolby Digital

Dolby Digital is a digital surround sound system that gives you completely independent multi-channel audio. With 3 front channels (front L/R and center), and 2 surround stereo channels, Dolby Digital provides 5 full-range audio channels. With an additional channel especially for bass effects, called LFE (Low Frequency Effect), the system has a total of 5.1-channels (LFE is counted as 0.1 channel). By using 2-channel stereo for the surround speakers, more accurate moving sound effects and surround sound environment are possible than with Dolby Surround. The wide dynamic range from maximum to minimum volume reproduced by the 5 full-range channels and the precise sound orientation generated using digital sound processing provide listeners with unprecedented excitement and realism. With this unit, any sound environment from monaural up to a 5.1-channel configuration can be freely selected for your enjoyment.

## ■ Dolby Digital EX

Dolby Digital EX creates 6 full-bandwidth output channels from 5.1-channel sources. This is done using a matrix decoder that derives 3 surround channels from the 2 in the original recording. For the best results, Dolby Digital EX should be used with movie sound tracks recorded with Dolby Digital Surround EX. With this additional channel, you can experience more dynamic and realistic moving sound especially with scenes with “fly-over” and “fly-around” effects.

## ■ Dolby Digital Plus

Dolby Digital Plus is an advanced audio technology developed for high-definition programming and media including HD broadcasts, HD DVD, and Blu-ray Disc. Selected as a mandatory audio standard for HD DVD and as an optional audio standard for Blu-ray Disc, this technology delivers multichannel sound with discrete channel output. Supporting bitrates up to 6.0 Mbps, Dolby Digital Plus can carry up to 7.1 discrete audio channels simultaneously. Supported by HDMI version 1.3 and designed for the optical disc players and AV receivers/amplifiers of the future, Dolby Digital Plus also remains fully compatible with the existing multichannel audio systems that incorporate Dolby Digital.

## ■ Dolby Pro Logic II

Dolby Pro Logic II is an improved technique used to decode vast numbers of existing Dolby Surround sources. This new technology enables a discrete 5-channel playback with 2 front left and right channels, 1 center channel, and 2 surround left and right channels instead of only 1 surround channel for conventional Pro Logic technology. There are three modes available: “Music mode” for music sources, “Movie mode” for movie sources and “Game mode” for game sources.

### ■ Dolby Pro Logic IIx

Dolby Pro Logic IIx is a new technology enabling discrete multi-channel playback from 2-channel or multi-channel sources. There are three modes available: “Music mode” for music sources, “Movie mode” for movie sources (for 2-channel sources only) and “Game mode” for game sources.

### ■ Dolby Surround

Dolby Surround uses a 4-channel analog recording system to reproduce realistic and dynamic sound effects: 2 front left and right channels (stereo), a center channel for dialog (monaural), and a surround channel for special sound effects (monaural). The surround channel reproduces sound within a narrow frequency range. Dolby Surround is widely used with nearly all video tapes and laser discs, and in many TV and cable broadcasts as well. The Dolby Pro Logic decoder built into this unit employs a digital signal processing system that automatically stabilizes the volume on each channel to enhance moving sound effects and directionality.

### ■ Dolby TrueHD

Dolby TrueHD is an advanced lossless audio technology developed for high-definition disc-based media including HD DVD and Blu-ray Disc. Selected as a mandatory audio standard for HD DVD and as an optional audio standard for Blu-ray Disc, this technology delivers sound that is bit-for-bit identical to the studio master, offering a high-definition home theater experience. Supporting bitrates up to 18.0 Mbps, Dolby TrueHD can carry up to 8 discrete channels of 24-bit/96 kHz audio simultaneously. Supported by HDMI version 1.3 and designed for the optical disc players and AV receivers/amplifiers of the future, Dolby TrueHD also remains fully compatible with the existing multichannel audio systems and retains the metadata capability of Dolby Digital, allowing dialog normalization and dynamic range control.

### ■ DSD

Direct Stream Digital (DSD) technology stores audio signals on digital storage media, such as Super Audio CDs. Using DSD, signals are stored as single bit values at a high-frequency sampling rate of 2.8224 MHz, while noise shaping and oversampling are used to reduce distortion, a common occurrence with very high quantization of audio signals. Due to the high sampling rate, better audio quality can be achieved than that offered by the PCM format used for normal audio CDs.

### ■ DTS 96/24

DTS 96/24 offers an unprecedented level of audio quality for multi-channel sound on DVD video, and is fully backward-compatible with all DTS decoders. “96” refers to a 96 kHz sampling rate compared to the typical 48 kHz sampling rate. “24” refers to 24-bit word length.

DTS 96/24 offers sound quality transparent to the original 96/24 master, and 96/24 5.1-channel sound with full-quality full-motion video for music programs and motion picture soundtracks on DVD video.

### ■ DTS Digital Surround

DTS digital surround was developed to replace the analog soundtracks of movies with a 6.1-channel digital sound track, and is now rapidly gaining popularity in movie theaters around the world. DTS, Inc. has developed a home theater system so that you can enjoy the depth of sound and natural spatial representation of DTS digital surround in your home. This system produces practically distortion-free 6-channel sound (technically, front left and right, center, surround left and right, and LFE 0.1 (subwoofer) channels for a total of 5.1 channels). This unit incorporates a DTS-ES decoder that enables 6.1-channel reproduction by adding the surround back channel to the existing 5.1-channel format.

### ■ DTS Express

DTS Express is an advanced audio technology for the optional feature on Blu-ray Disc or HD DVD, which offers high-quality, low bit rate audio optimized for network streaming, and Internet applications. DTS Express is used for the Secondary Audio feature of Blu-ray Disc or the Sub Audio feature of HD DVD. These features deliver audio commentaries (for example, the additional commentaries made by the director of a film) on demand by the users via the Internet, etc. DTS Express signals are mixed down with the main audio stream on the player component, and the component sends the mixed audio stream to the AV receivers/amplifiers via digital coaxial, digital optical, or analog connections.

### ■ DTS-HD High Resolution Audio

DTS-HD High Resolution Audio is an high resolution audio technology developed for high-definition disc-based media including HD DVD and Blu-ray Disc. Selected as an optional audio standard for both HD DVD and Blu-ray Disc, this technology delivers sound that is virtually indistinguishable from the original, offering a high-definition home theater experience. Supporting bitrates up to 3.0 Mbps for HD DVD and 6.0 Mbps for Blu-ray Disc, DTS-HD High Resolution Audio can carry up to 7.1 discrete channels of 24-bit/96 kHz audio simultaneously. Supported by HDMI version 1.3 and designed for the optical disc players and AV receivers/amplifiers of the future, DTS-HD High Resolution Audio also remains fully compatible with the existing multichannel audio systems that incorporate DTS Digital Surround.



### ■ DTS-HD Master Audio

DTS-HD Master Audio is an advanced lossless audio technology developed for high-definition disc-based media including HD DVD and Blu-ray Disc. Selected as a mandatory audio standard for both HD DVD and Blu-ray Disc, this technology delivers sound that is bit-for-bit identical to the studio master, offering a high-definition home theater experience. Supporting bitrates up to 18.0 Mbps for HD DVD and up to 24.5 Mbps for Blu-ray Disc, DTS-HD Master Audio can carry up to 7.1 discrete channels of 24-bit/96 kHz audio simultaneously. Supported by HDMI version 1.3 and designed for the optical disc players and AV receivers/amplifiers of the future, DTS-HD Master Audio also remains fully compatible with the existing multichannel audio systems that incorporate DTS Digital Surround.

### ■ HDMI

HDMI (High-Definition Multimedia Interface) is the first industry-supported, uncompressed, all-digital audio/video interface. Providing an interface between any source (such as a set-top box or AV receiver) and an audio/video monitor (such as a digital television), HDMI supports standard, enhanced or high-definition video as well as multi-channel digital audio using a single cable. HDMI transmits all ATSC HDTV standards and supports 8-channel digital audio, with bandwidth to spare to accommodate future enhancements and requirements. When used in combination with HDCP (High-bandwidth Digital Content Protection), HDMI provides a secure audio/video interface that meets the security requirements of content providers and system operators. For further information on HDMI, visit the HDMI website at "<http://www.hdmi.org>".

### ■ LFE 0.1 channel

This channel reproduces low-frequency signals. The frequency range of this channel is from 20 Hz to 120 Hz. This channel is counted as 0.1 because it only enforces a low-frequency range compared to the full-range reproduced by the other 5/6 channels in Dolby Digital or DTS 5.1/6.1-channel systems.

### ■ MP3

One of the audio compression methods used by MPEG. It employs the irreversible compression method, which achieves a high compression rate by thinning out the data of hardly audible part to the human ears. It is said to be capable of compressing the data quantity by about 1/11 (128 kbps) while maintaining a similar audio quality to music CD.

### ■ Neo:6

Neo:6 decodes the conventional 2-channel sources for 6-channel playback by the specific decoder. It enables playback with the full-range channels with higher separation just like digital discrete signal playback. There are two modes available: "Music mode" for music sources and "Cinema mode" for movie sources.

### ■ PCM (Linear PCM)

Linear PCM is a signal format under which an analog audio signal is digitized, recorded and transmitted without using any compression. This is used as a method of recording CDs and DVD audio. The PCM system uses a technique for sampling the size of the analog signal per very small unit of time. Standing for "Pulse Code Modulation", the analog signal is encoded as pulses and then modulated for recording.

### ■ Sampling frequency and number of quantized bits

When digitizing an analog audio signal, the number of times the signal is sampled per second is called the sampling frequency, while the degree of fineness when converting the sound level into a numeric value is called the number of quantized bits. The range of rates that can be played back is determined based on the sampling rate, while the dynamic range representing the sound level difference is determined by the number of quantized bits. In principle, the higher the sampling frequency, the wider the range of frequencies that can be played back, and the higher the number of quantized bits, the more finely the sound level can be reproduced.

### ■ S-video signal

With the S-video signal system, the video signal normally transmitted using a pin cable is separated and transmitted as the Y signal for the luminance and the C signal for the chrominance through the S-video cable. Using the S VIDEO jack eliminates video signal transmission loss and allows recording and playback of even more beautiful images.

### ■ WAV

Windows standard audio file format, which defines the method of recording the digital data obtained by converting audio signals. It does not specify the compression (coding) method so a desired compression method can be used with it. By default, it is compatible with the PCM method (no compression) and some compression methods including the ADPCM method.

### ■ WMA

An audio compression method developed by Microsoft Corporation. It employs the irreversible compression method, which achieves a high compression rate by thinning out the data of hardly audible part to the human ears. It is said to be capable of compressing the data quantity by about 1/22 (64 kbps) while maintaining a similar audio quality to music CD.

■ **“x.v.Color”**

A color space standard supported by HDMI version 1.3. It is a more extensive color space than sRGB, and allows the expression of colors that could not be expressed before.

While remaining compatible with the color gamut of sRGB standards, “x.v.Color” expands the color space and can thus produce more vivid, natural images. It is particularly effective for still pictures and computer graphics.

# Sound field program information

## ■ Elements of a sound field

What really creates the rich, full tones of a live instrument are the multiple reflections from the walls of the room. In addition to making the sound live, these reflections enable us to tell where the player is situated as well as the size and shape of the room in which we are sitting. There are two distinct types of sound reflections that combine to make up the sound field in addition to the direct sound coming straight to our ears from the player's instrument.

### Early reflections

Reflected sounds reach our ears extremely rapidly (50 ms to 100 ms after the direct sound), after reflecting from one surface only (for example, from a wall or the ceiling). Early reflections actually add clarity to the direct sound.

### Reverberations

These are caused by reflections from more than one surface (for example, from the walls, and/or the ceiling) so numerous that they merge together to form a continuous sonic afterglow. They are non-directional and lessen the clarity of the direct sound.

Direct sound, early reflections and subsequent reverberations taken together help us to determine the subjective size and shape of the room, and it is this information that the digital sound field processor reproduces in order to create sound fields.

If you could create the appropriate early reflections and subsequent reverberations in your listening room, you would be able to create your own listening environment. The acoustics in your room could be changed to those of a concert hall, a dance floor, or a room with virtually any size at all. This ability to create sound fields at will is exactly what Yamaha has done with the digital sound field processor.

## ■ CINEMA DSP

Since the Dolby Surround and DTS systems were originally designed for use in movie theaters, their effect is best felt in a theater having many speakers designed for acoustic effects. Since home conditions, such as room size, wall material, number of speakers, and so on, can differ so widely, it is inevitable that there are differences in the sound heard. Based on a wealth of actually measured data, Yamaha CINEMA DSP provides the audiovisual experience of a movie theater in the listening room of your own home by using the Yamaha original sound field technology combined with various digital audio systems.

## ■ CINEMA DSP 3D

The actually measured sound field data contain the information of the height of the sound images. CINEMA DSP 3D feature achieves the reproduction of the accurate height of the sound images so that it creates the accurate and intensive stereoscopic sound fields in a listening room.

## ■ SILENT CINEMA

Yamaha has developed a natural, realistic sound effect DSP algorithm for headphones. Parameters for headphones have been set for each sound field so that accurate representations of all the sound field programs can be enjoyed on headphones.

## ■ Virtual CINEMA DSP

Yamaha has developed a Virtual CINEMA DSP algorithm that allows you to enjoy DSP sound field surround effects even without any surround speakers by using virtual surround speakers. It is even possible to enjoy Virtual CINEMA DSP using a minimal two-speaker system that does not include a center speaker.

## ■ Compressed Music Enhancer

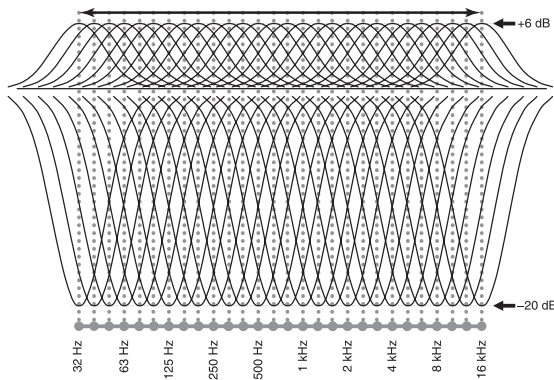
The Compressed Music Enhancer feature of this unit enhances your listening experience by regenerating the missing harmonics in a compression artifact. As a result, flattened complexity due to the loss of high-frequency fidelity as well as lack of bass due to the loss of low-frequency bass is compensated, providing improved performance of the overall sound system.

# Parametric equalizer information

This unit employs Yamaha Parametric room Acoustic Optimizer (YPAO) technology to optimize the frequency characteristics of its parametric equalizer to match your listening environment. YPAO uses a combination of the following three parameters (Frequency, Gain and Q factor) to provide highly precise adjustment of the frequency characteristics.

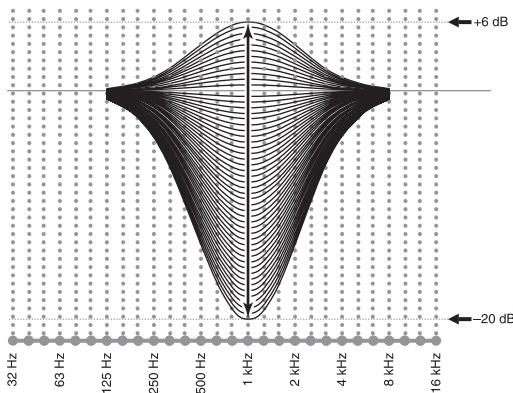
## ■ Frequency

This parameter is adjustable in one-third octave increments between 32 Hz and 16 kHz.



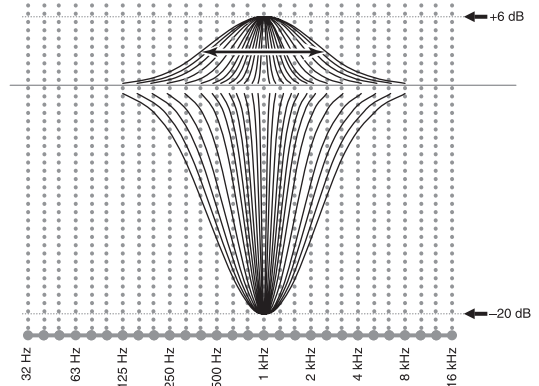
## ■ Gain

This parameter is adjustable in increments of 0.5 dB between -20 and +6 dB.



## ■ Q factor

The width of the specified frequency band is referred to as the Q factor. This parameter is adjustable between the values 0.5 and 10.



YPAO adjusts frequency characteristics to suit your listening requirements using a combination of the above three parameters (Frequency, Gain and Q factor) for each equalizer band in this unit's parametric equalizer. This unit has 7 equalizer bands for each channel.

The use of multiple equalizer bands enables more precise adjustments of frequency characteristics (as in Figure 2). This is not possible using only a single equalizer band (as in Figure 1).

Figure 1

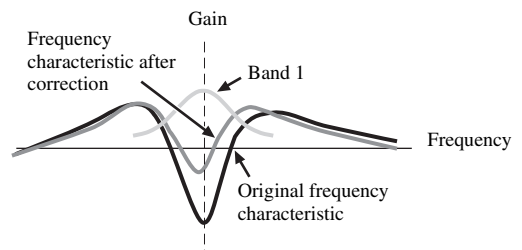
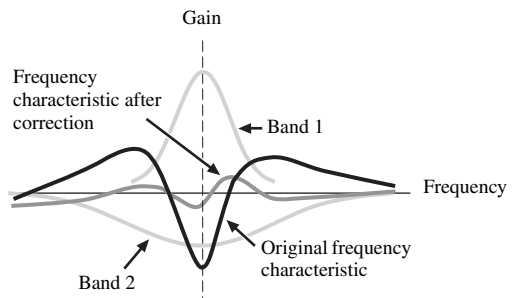


Figure 2



# Specifications

## AUDIO SECTION

- Minimum RMS Output Power for Front, Center, Surround, Surround back  
20 Hz to 20 kHz, 0.04% THD, 8 Ω ..... 130 W
- Dynamic Power (IHF)  
8/6/4/2 Ω ..... 160/195/255/335 W
- Maximum Useful Output Power (JEITA)  
[Asia, General, China and Korea models]  
1 kHz, 10% THD, 8 Ω ..... 175 W
- Maximum Output Power [U.K. and Europe models]  
1 kHz, 0.7% THD, 4 Ω ..... 180 W
- Dynamic Headroom  
8 Ω ..... 0.9 dB
- IEC Output Power [U.K. and Europe models]  
1 kHz, 0.04% THD, 8 Ω ..... 130 W
- Damping Factor (IHF)  
1 kHz, 8 Ω ..... 150 or more
- Input Sensitivity/Input Impedance  
PHONO ..... 3.5 mV/47 kΩ  
CD, etc. .... 200 mV/47 kΩ  
MULTI CH INPUT ..... 200 mV/47 kΩ
- Maximum Input Voltage  
PHONO (1 kHz, 0.1% THD) ..... 60 mV or more  
CD, etc. (1 kHz, 0.5% THD) ..... 2.4 V or more
- Rated Output Voltage/Output Impedance  
OUT (REC) ..... 200 mV/900 Ω  
PRE OUT ..... 1.0 V/1.2 kΩ  
SUBWOOFER ..... 2.0 V/1.2 kΩ  
ZONE 2/ZONE 3 OUT ..... 1.0 V/1.4 kΩ
- Headphone Jack Rated Output/Impedance  
CD, etc. (1 kHz, 40 mV, 8 Ω) ..... 150 mV/100 Ω
- Frequency Response  
CD to Front L/R, Pure Direct ..... 10 Hz to 100 kHz, +0/-3 dB
- RIAA Equalization Deviation  
PHONO (20 Hz to 20 kHz) ..... 0 ± 0.5 dB
- Total Harmonic Distortion  
PHONO to OUT (REC)  
(20 Hz to 20 kHz, 1 V) ..... 0.02% or less  
CD, etc. to Front L/R  
(20 Hz to 20 kHz, 65 W, 8 Ω) ..... 0.04% or less
- Signal to Noise Ratio (IHF-A Network)  
PHONO (5 mV) to Front L/R  
[Australia, U.K. and Europe models] ..... 81 dB or more  
[Other models] ..... 86 dB or more  
CD, etc. (250 mV) to Front L/R ..... 100 dB or more
- Residual Noise (IHF-A Network)  
Front L/R ..... 150 μV or less
- Channel Separation (1 kHz/10 kHz)  
PHONO (shortened) to Front L/R ..... 60 dB/55 dB or more  
CD, etc. (5.1 kΩ shortened)  
to Front L/R ..... 60 dB/45 dB or more

- Tone Control (Front L/R, Center, Subwoofer)  
BASS Boost/Cut ..... ±6 dB/50 Hz  
BASS Turnover Frequency ..... 350 Hz  
TREBLE Boost/Cut ..... ±6 dB/20 kHz  
TREBLE Turnover Frequency ..... 3.5 kHz
- Zone 2/Zone 3 Tone Control (Front L/R)  
BASS Boost/Cut ..... ±10 dB/100 Hz  
BASS Turnover Frequency ..... 450 Hz  
TREBLE Boost/Cut ..... ±10 dB/10 kHz  
TREBLE Turnover Frequency ..... 2.0 kHz
- Filter Characteristics (fc=40/60/80/90/100/110/120/160/200 Hz)  
H.P.F. (Front, Center, Surround, Surround back) ..... 12 dB/oct.  
L.P.F. (Subwoofer) ..... 24 dB/oct.

## VIDEO SECTION

- Video Format (Gray Back)  
[U.S.A., Canada, General and Korea models] ..... NTSC  
[U.K., Europe, Australia, Asia and China models] ..... PAL
- Video Format (Video Conversion) ..... NTSC/PAL
- Signal Level  
Composite ..... 1 Vp-p/75 Ω  
S-video ..... 1 Vp-p/75 Ω (Y), 0.286 Vp-p/75 Ω (C)  
Component ..... 1 Vp-p/75 Ω (Y), 0.7 Vp-p/75 Ω (P<sub>B</sub>/P<sub>R</sub>)
- Maximum Input Level (Video Conversion Off) ..... 1.5 Vp-p or more
- Signal to Noise Ratio (Video Conversion Off) ..... 60 dB or more
- Frequency Response (MONITOR OUT)  
Component (Video Conversion Off) ..... 5 Hz to 100 MHz, ±3 dB

## FM SECTION

- Tuning Range  
[U.S.A. and Canada models] ..... 87.5 to 107.9 MHz  
[Asia and General models] ..... 87.5/87.50 to 108.0/108.00 MHz  
[Other models] ..... 87.50 to 108.00 MHz
- 50 dB Quieting Sensitivity (IHF)  
Mono/Stereo ..... 2.0/25 μV (17.3/39.2 dBf)
- Usable Sensitivity (IHF) ..... 1.0 μV (11.2 dBf)
- Selectivity (400 kHz) ..... 70 dB
- Signal to Noise Ratio (IHF)  
Mono/Stereo ..... 76 dB/70 dB
- Harmonic Distortion (1 kHz)  
Mono/Stereo ..... 0.2/0.3%
- Stereo Separation (1 kHz)  
Stereo ..... 42 dB
- Frequency Response  
Stereo ..... 20 Hz to 15 kHz, +0.5, -2 dB
- Antenna Input (unbalanced) ..... 75 Ω

## AM SECTION

- Tuning Range  
[U.S.A. and Canada models] ..... 530 to 1710 kHz  
[Asia and General models] ..... 530/531 to 1710/1611 kHz  
[Other models] ..... 531 to 1611 kHz
- Usable Sensitivity ..... 300 μV/m

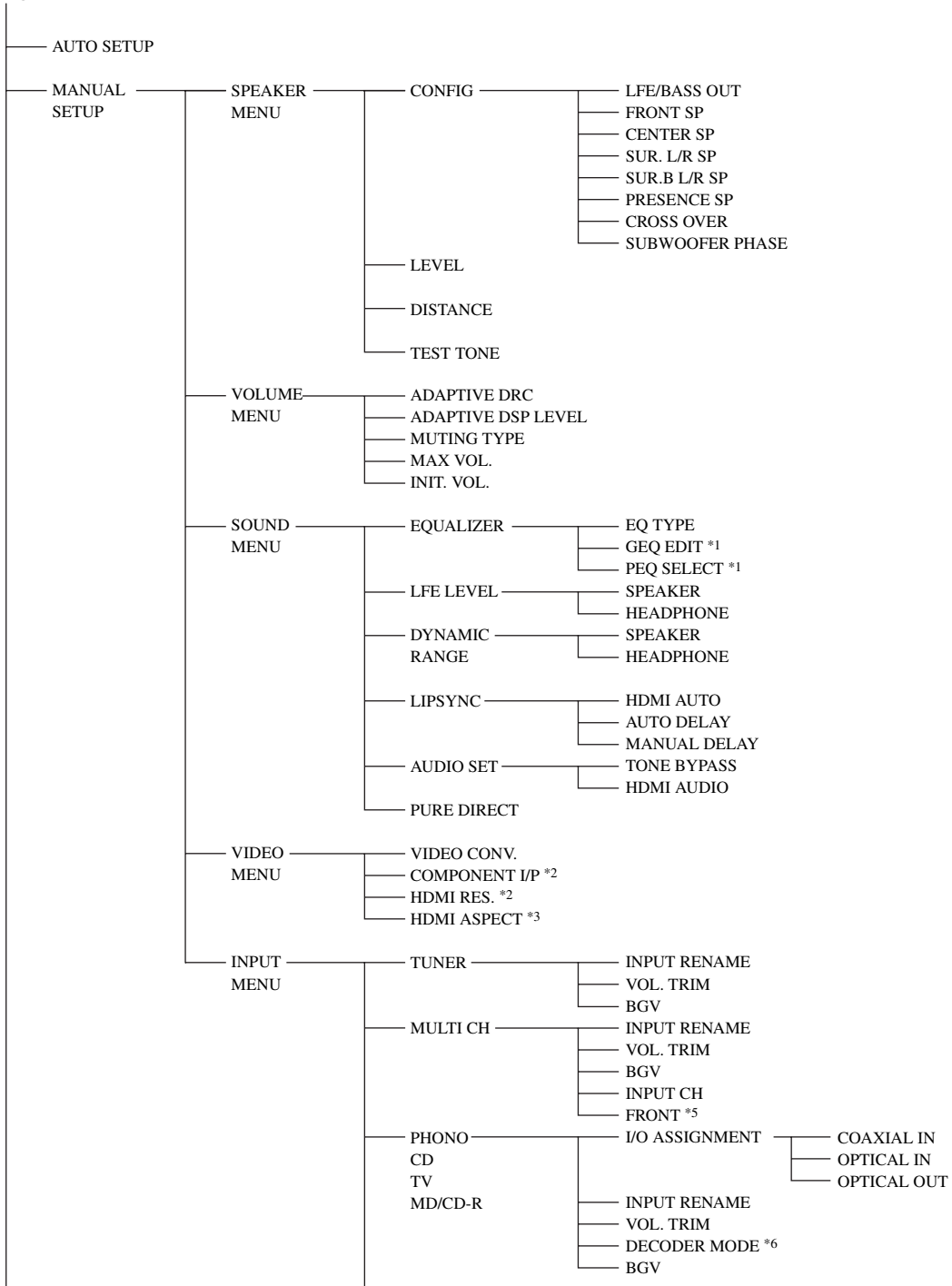
**GENERAL**

- Power Supply
  - [U.S.A. and Canada models] ..... AC 120 V, 60 Hz
  - [General and Asia models]  
..... AC 110/120/220/230–240 V, 50/60 Hz
  - [China model] ..... AC 220 V, 50 Hz
  - [Korea model] ..... AC 220 V, 60 Hz
  - [Australia model] ..... AC 240 V, 50 Hz
  - [U.K. and Europe models] ..... AC 230 V, 50 Hz
- Power Consumption
  - [U.S.A. and Canada models] ..... 500 W/630 VA
  - [Other models] ..... 500 W
- Standby Power Consumption
  - [General model] (AC 240 V, 50 Hz) ..... 0.33 W or less
  - [Other models] ..... 0.1 W or less
- Maximum Power Consumption [General model only]
  - 6ch, 10% THD ..... 1100 W
- AC Outlets
  - [U.S.A. and Canada models] .... 2 (Total 100 W/0.8 A maximum)
  - [Asia, General and China models] ..... 2 (Total 50 W maximum)
  - [Australia model] ..... 1 (100 W maximum)
  - [U.K. model] ..... 1 (100 W/0.4 A maximum)
  - [Europe model] ..... 2 (Total 100 W/0.4 A maximum)
- Dimensions (W x H x D) ..... 435 x 171 x 438.5 mm  
(17-1/8 x 6-3/4 x 17-1/4 in)
- Weight ..... 17.1 kg

\* Specifications are subject to change without notice.

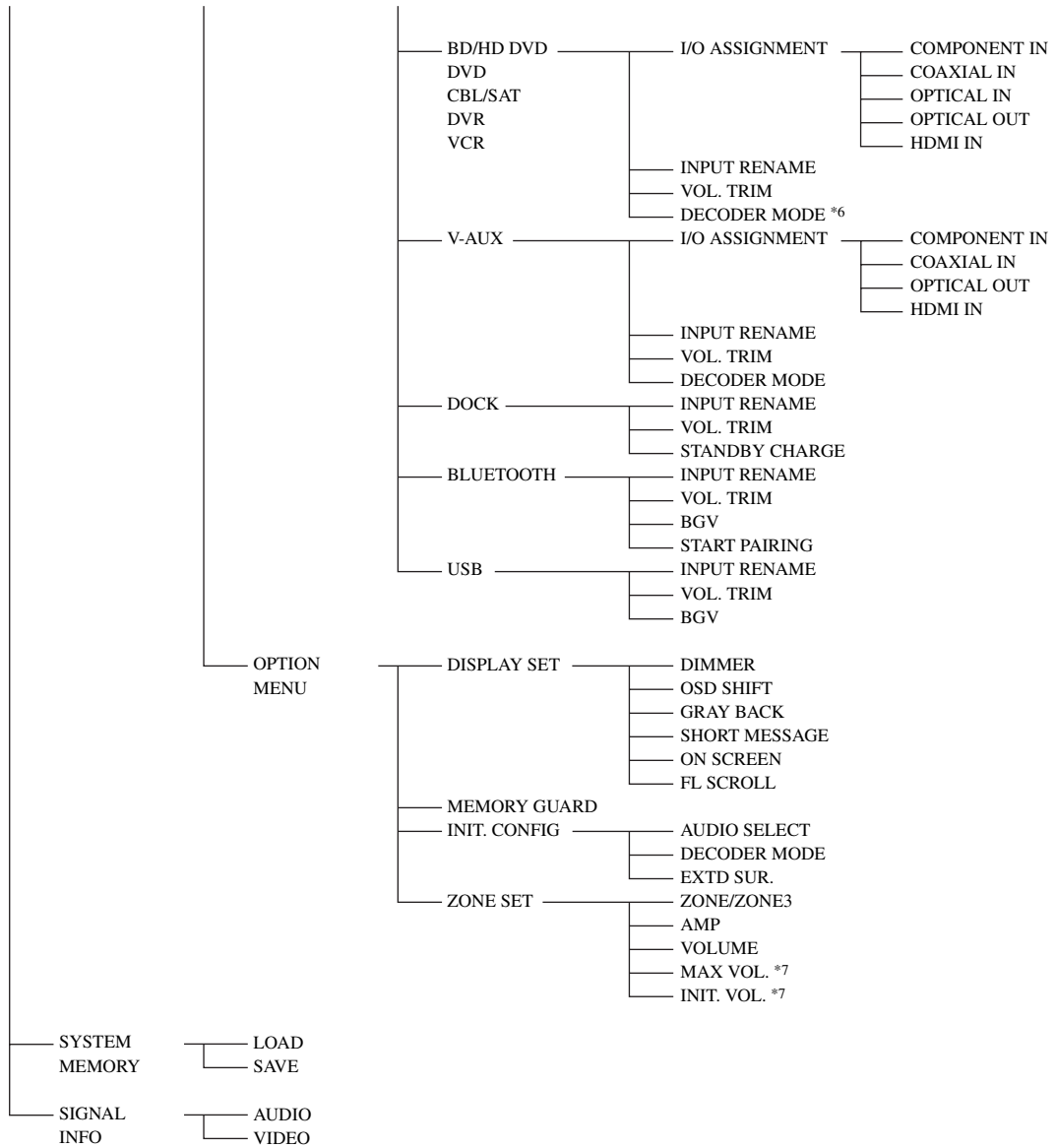
# SET MENU tree

Press **MENU** on the remote control



ADDITIONAL  
INFORMATION

English



**Notes**

- \*1 Available depending on the parameter selected in "EQ TYPE".
- \*2 Available when "VIDEO CONV." is set to "ON".
- \*3 Available when "HDMI RES." is not set to "THRGH".
- \*4 Available when "INPUT CH" is set to "8ch".
- \*5 Available when a digital audio input jack is assigned in "I/O ASSIGNMENT".
- \*6 Available when "VOLUME" is not set to "FIX".



# Index

## ■ Numerics

1 SPEAKER MENU, MANUAL SETUP .....	67
2 VOLUME MENU, MANUAL SETUP .....	69
2ch Stereo, sound field program .....	43
3 SOUND MENU, MANUAL SETUP .....	70
3D indicator .....	26
4 VIDEO MENU, MANUAL SETUP .....	72
5 INPUT MENU, MANUAL SETUP .....	73
5.1-channel speaker connection .....	13
5.1-channel speaker layout .....	10
6 OPTION MENU, MANUAL SETUP .....	75
6.1-channel speaker connection .....	13
6.1-channel speaker layout .....	10
7.1-channel speaker connection .....	12
7.1-channel speaker layout .....	10
7ch Enhancer, sound field program .....	43
7ch Stereo, sound field program .....	43

## ■ A

A)CONFIG, SPEAKER MENU .....	67
A)DISPLAY SET, OPTION MENU .....	75
A)EQUALIZER, SOUND MENU .....	70
AC OUTLET(S) .....	24
AC power cable connection .....	24
Action Game, sound field program .....	41
ADAPTIVE DRC indicator .....	26
ADAPTIVE DRC, VOLUME MENU .....	69
ADAPTIVE DSP LEVEL, VOLUME MENU .....	69
Adaptive DSP level, VOLUME MENU .....	69
Adaptive dynamic range control, VOLUME MENU .....	69
Advanced setup .....	94
Advanced sound configurations .....	58
Adventure, sound field program .....	42
AM antenna connection .....	23
AM tuner, troubleshooting .....	100
AM tuning .....	46
AM tuning operation .....	46
AMP, operation mode selector .....	28
AMP, zone set .....	77
ANALOG RES., input source information .....	36
ANTENNA terminals .....	9
Audio and video synchronization, SOUND MENU .....	71
Audio input BGV, INPUT MENU .....	74
Audio input jack selection .....	35
AUDIO jacks .....	15
Audio jacks .....	15
AUDIO SELECT .....	35

AUDIO SELECT, initial configuration .....	76
Audio select, initial configuration .....	76
Audio settings, SOUND MENU .....	72
Audio signal flow .....	17
Audio signals, HDMI .....	16
AUTO DELAY, lip sync .....	71
Auto delay, lip sync .....	71
AUTO SETUP .....	29
AUTO SETUP, message .....	104
Automatic setup .....	29
Automatic station preset, FM/AM tuning .....	47

## ■ B

B)LEVEL, SPEAKER MENU .....	68
B)LFE LEVEL, SOUND MENU .....	71
B)MEMORY GUARD, OPTION MENU .....	76
Banana plug .....	14
Bass cross over, speaker configurations .....	68
BGV, INPUT MENU .....	74
BI-AMP, advanced setup .....	95
Bi-amplification connections .....	14
Bi-amplifier mode, advanced setup .....	95
BITRATE, input source information .....	36
Bluetooth adapter connection .....	22
Bluetooth component playback .....	54
Bluetooth, troubleshooting .....	102
Blu-ray Disc player connection .....	20

## ■ C

C)DISTANCE, SPEAKER MENU .....	68
C)DYNAMIC RANGE, SOUND MENU .....	71
C)INIT. CONFIG, OPTION MENU .....	76
C.IMAGE, decoder parameter .....	65
CD player connection .....	21
CD recorder connection .....	21
Cellar Club, sound field program .....	40
CENTER jack .....	22
CENTER PRE OUT jack .....	21
CENTER SP, speaker configurations .....	67
Center speaker .....	11
Center speaker, speaker configurations .....	67
CENTER WIDTH, decoder parameter .....	65
Chamber, sound field program .....	40
CHANNEL, input source information .....	36
Charge on standby, INPUT MENU .....	74
Church in Freiburg, sound field program .....	40
CINEMA DSP 3D mode .....	44
CINEMA DSP indicator .....	26
CLASSICAL, sound field program .....	39

Clearing configurations, remote control .....	89
Clearing preset stations, FM/AM tuning .....	48
COAXIAL jacks .....	15
COMPONENT I/P, VIDEO MENU .....	72
Component interlace/progressive up-conversion, VIDEO MENU .....	72
COMPONENT VIDEO jacks .....	15
Compressed Music Enhancer mode .....	43
Connecting AC power cable .....	24
Connecting AM antenna .....	23
Connecting Bluetooth adapter .....	22
Connecting Blu-ray Disc player .....	20
Connecting CD player .....	21
Connecting CD recorder .....	21
Connecting DVD player .....	20
Connecting DVD recorder .....	20
Connecting external amplifier .....	21
Connecting FM antenna .....	23
Connecting HD DVD player .....	20
Connecting iPod universal dock .....	22
Connecting MD recorder .....	21
Connecting power cable .....	24
Connecting projector .....	18
Connecting set-top box .....	20
Connecting speaker cable .....	14
Connecting speakers .....	12
Connecting turntable .....	21
Connecting TV monitor .....	18
Connecting VCR .....	21
Connecting YBA-10 .....	22
Connecting YDS-11 .....	22
Connecting Zone 2/3 components .....	91
Connections .....	9
Controlling other components .....	82
Controlling Zone 2/3 .....	92
CROSS OVER, speaker configurations .....	68
CT LEVEL, sound field parameter .....	63

## ■ D

D)LIPSYNC, SOUND MENU .....	71
D)TEST TONE, SPEAKER MENU .....	69
D)ZONE SET, OPTION MENU .....	77
Decoder descriptions .....	58
Decoder indicators .....	26
DECODER MODE, initial configuration .....	76
Decoder mode, initial configuration .....	76
DECODER MODE, INPUT MENU .....	74
Decoder mode, INPUT MENU .....	74
Decoder parameter .....	65
Decoder selection .....	58
DIALOG LIFT, sound field parameter .....	60
DIALOG, input source information .....	36
DIGITAL INPUT jacks .....	9
DIGITAL OUTPUT jacks .....	9
DIMENSION, decoder parameter .....	65

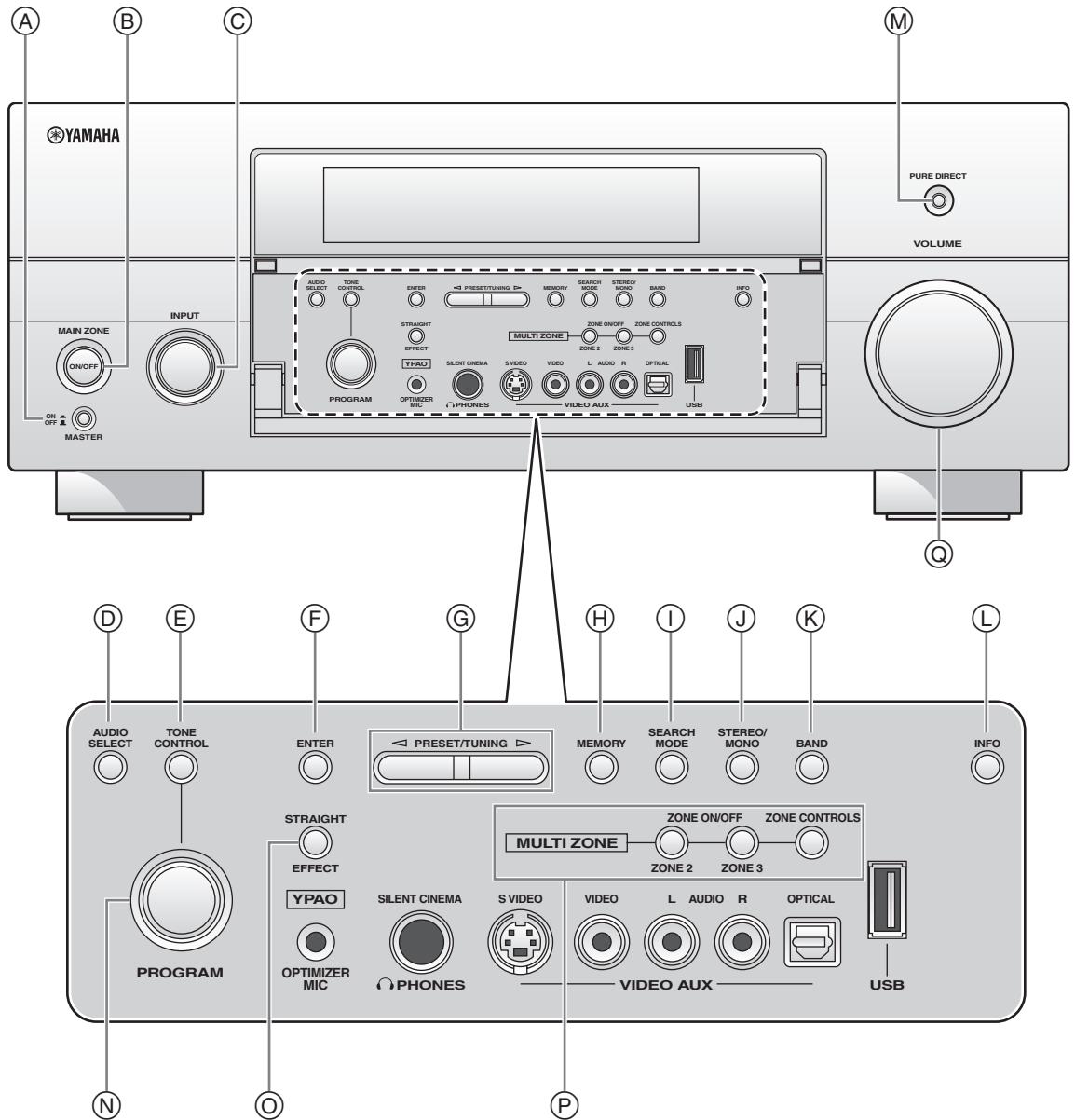
- DIMMER, Display settings ..... 75  
 Dimmer, Display settings ..... 75  
 Direct frequency tuning,  
   FM/AM tuning ..... 46  
 DIRECT, sound field parameter ..... 63  
 Display settings, OPTION MENU ..... 75  
 Display window, remote control ..... 27  
 Displaying input source information ... 36  
 DIST, automatic setup ..... 30  
 Drama, sound field program ..... 42  
 DSP indicators ..... 26  
 DSP LEVEL, sound field parameter ... 60  
 DVD player connection ..... 20  
 DVD recorder connection ..... 20  
 Dynamic range, SOUND MENU ..... 71
- **E**  
 E)AUDIO SET, SOUND MENU ..... 72  
 EFFECT LEVELL,  
   sound field parameter ..... 64  
 Effect sound level,  
   sound field parameter ..... 60  
 ENHANCER indicator ..... 26  
 ENHANCER, sound field program .... 43  
 ENTERTAIN, sound field program .... 41  
 Equalizer type select, equalizer ..... 70  
 Equalizer, SOUND MENU ..... 70  
 EXT D SUR., initial configuration ..... 77  
 Extended surround,  
   initial configuration ..... 77  
 External amplifier connection ..... 21
- **F**  
 F)PURE DIRECT, Audio settings ..... 72  
 FL SCROLL, Display settings ..... 76  
 FLAG, input source information ..... 36  
 FM antenna connection ..... 23  
 FM tuner, troubleshooting ..... 100  
 FM tuning ..... 46  
 FM tuning operation ..... 46  
 FORMAT, input source information ... 36  
 FRONT L/R jacks ..... 22  
 Front left and right channels input jack,  
   INPUT MENU ..... 75  
 Front left/right speaker ..... 11  
 Front panel display scroll,  
   Display settings ..... 76  
 Front panel door ..... 28  
 FRONT PRE OUT jacks ..... 21  
 FRONT SP, speaker configurations .... 67  
 Front speakers,  
   speaker configurations ..... 67  
 FRONT, INPUT MENU ..... 75
- **G**  
 GEQ EDIT, equalizer ..... 70  
 Graphic equalizer edit, equalizer ..... 70  
 Gray back, Display settings ..... 75  
 GRAY BACK,  
   Display settings, Display settings ... 75
- **H**  
 Hall in Amsterdam,  
   sound field program ..... 40  
 Hall in Munich, sound field program ... 39  
 Hall in Vienna, sound field program .... 39  
 HD DVD player connection ..... 20  
 HDMI aspect ratio, VIDEO MENU .... 73  
 HDMI ASPECT, VIDEO MENU ..... 73  
 HDMI AUDIO, Audio settings ..... 72  
 HDMI audio, Audio settings ..... 72  
 HDMI cable plug ..... 16  
 HDMI error message ..... 36  
 HDMI information ..... 16  
 HDMI jack ..... 16  
 HDMI monitor check,  
   advanced setup ..... 95  
 HDMI RES.,  
   input source information ..... 36  
 HDMI RES., VIDEO MENU ..... 73  
 HDMI resolution, VIDEO MENU ..... 73  
 HDMI signal ..... 16  
 HDMI SIGNAL,  
   input source information ..... 36  
 HDMI, troubleshooting ..... 100  
 HEADPHONE, dynamic range ..... 71  
 Headphones indicator ..... 26  
 Headphones use ..... 35  
 Headphones, dynamic range ..... 71
- **I**  
 I/O ASSIGNMENT, INPUT MENU ... 74  
 ID1/ID2 indicator ..... 27  
 Information display ..... 27  
 Infrared window, remote control ..... 27  
 INIT. VOL., zone set ..... 77  
 INIT.DLY, sound field parameter ..... 61  
 Initial configuration,  
   OPTION MENU ..... 76  
 INITIALIZE, advanced setup ..... 95  
 INPUT CH, INPUT MENU ..... 75  
 Input channel indicators ..... 27  
 Input channels, INPUT MENU ..... 75  
 INPUT RENAME, INPUT MENU .... 74  
 Input rename, INPUT MENU ..... 74  
 Input signal indicators ..... 26  
 Input source indicators ..... 26  
 Input source information display ..... 36  
 Input/output assignment,  
   INPUT MENU ..... 74  
 iPod control ..... 52  
 iPod playback ..... 52  
 iPod universal dock connection ..... 22  
 iPod, troubleshooting ..... 102
- **L**  
 LFE/BASS OUT,  
   speaker configurations ..... 67  
 LFE/bass out,  
   speaker configurations ..... 67  
 Lip sync, SOUND MENU ..... 71  
 LIVE/CLUB, sound field program .... 40  
 LIVENESS, sound field parameter .... 62  
 Loading system settings ..... 79  
 Low-frequency effect level,  
   SOUND MENU ..... 71  
 LVL, automatic setup ..... 30
- **M**  
 Macro programming,  
   remote control ..... 87  
 MANUAL DELAY, lip sync ..... 71  
 Manual delay, lip sync ..... 71  
 MANUAL SETUP ..... 66  
 MANUAL SETUP operation ..... 66  
 Manual station preset,  
   FM/AM tuning ..... 47  
 MAX VOL., VOLUME MENU ..... 70  
 MAX VOL., zone set ..... 77  
 Maximum volume,  
   VOLUME MENU ..... 70  
 MD recorder connection ..... 21  
 Memory guard, OPTION MENU ..... 76  
 Menu browse mode control,  
   iPod playback ..... 52  
 Menu browsing indicator ..... 26  
 MONITOR CHECK,  
   advanced setup ..... 95  
 Mono Movie, sound field program .... 42  
 MOVIE, sound field program ..... 42  
 MULTI CH INPUT jacks ..... 9  
 Multi-channel input component  
   selection ..... 35  
 Multi-channel sources with  
   headphones ..... 43  
 Multi-zone configuration ..... 91  
 Music Video, sound field program .... 41  
 Muting audio output ..... 36  
 MUTING TYPE,  
   VOLUME MENU ..... 70  
 Muting type, VOLUME MENU ..... 70
- **N**  
 Neo:6 Cinema ..... 58  
 Neo:6 Music ..... 58  
 Number of speakers,  
   automatic setup ..... 30
- **O**  
 ON SCREEN, Display settings ..... 76  
 On-screen display time,  
   Display settings ..... 76  
 Operation mode selector ..... 28  
 OPTICAL jacks ..... 15  
 Optimizing speaker setting ..... 29  
 OSD SHIFT, Display settings ..... 75  
 OSD shift, Display settings ..... 75
- **P**  
 P.INIT.DLY, sound field parameter .... 61  
 Pairing with Bluetooth component .... 54  
 PANORAMA, decoder parameter ..... 65  
 Parameter initialization,  
   advanced setup ..... 95  
 Parametric equalizer information ..... 112  
 Parametric equalizer select,  
   equalizer ..... 71  
 PEQ SELECT, equalizer ..... 71  
 PHONES jack ..... 35  
 PL LEVEL, sound field parameter .... 63  
 Placing speakers ..... 10  
 PLII Game ..... 58

- PLII Movie ..... 58  
 PLII Music ..... 58  
 PLIIX Game ..... 58  
 PLIIX Movie ..... 58  
 PLIIX Music ..... 58  
 Power cable connection ..... 24  
 PR LEVEL, sound field parameter ..... 63  
 PRE OUT jacks ..... 9  
 Presence left/right speaker ..... 11  
 PRESENCE SP,  
   speaker configurations ..... 68  
 Presence speaker indicators ..... 27  
 Presence speakers,  
   speaker configurations ..... 68  
 PRESET indicator ..... 26  
 Preset stations, FM/AM tuner ..... 47  
 Pro Logic ..... 58  
 Programming other remote controls ..... 85  
 Projector connection ..... 18  
 Pure Direct mode ..... 45  
 Pure direct, Audio settings ..... 72  
 Pure hi-fi sound listening ..... 45
- **R**
- Rear panel ..... 9  
 Recalling a preset station,  
   FM/AM tuning ..... 48  
 Recital/Opera, sound field program ..... 41  
 REMOTE CON AMP,  
   advanced setup ..... 94  
 Remote control ..... 81  
 Remote control code setting ..... 83  
 Remote control ID setting,  
   advanced setup ..... 94  
 Remote control use ..... 27  
 Remote control, installing batteries ..... 4  
 Remote control, troubleshooting ..... 101  
 REMOTE IN/OUT jacks ..... 22  
 REMOTE SENSOR,  
   advanced setup ..... 94  
 Remote sensor, advanced setup ..... 94  
 Repeat, iPod playback ..... 53  
 Resetting system ..... 106  
 REV.DELAY,  
   sound field parameter ..... 63  
 REV.LEVEL, sound field parameter ..... 63  
 REV.TIMES, sound field parameter ..... 62  
 Roleplaying Game,  
   sound field program ..... 41  
 ROOM SIZE, sound field parameter ..... 61  
 RS-232C STANDBY,  
   advanced setup ..... 94
- **S**
- S VIDEO jacks ..... 15  
 S.INIT.DLY, sound field parameter ..... 61  
 S.LIVENESS,  
   sound field parameter ..... 62  
 S.ROOM SIZE,  
   sound field parameter ..... 61  
 SAMPLING,  
   input source information ..... 36  
 Saving system settings ..... 78
- SB INIT.DLY,  
   sound field parameter ..... 61  
 SB LEVELSL LEVEL ..... 63  
 SB LIVENESS,  
   sound field parameter ..... 62  
 SB ROOM SIZE,  
   sound field parameter ..... 61  
 Sci-Fi, sound field program ..... 42  
 Selecting audio input jacks ..... 35  
 Selecting multi-channel input  
   component ..... 35  
 Selecting sound field programs ..... 38  
 SET MENU tree ..... 115  
 Setting remote control ID,  
   remote control ID setting ..... 94  
 Setting zone, zone set ..... 77  
 Set-top box connection ..... 20  
 Short message display ..... 76  
 SHORT MESSAGE,  
   Display settings ..... 76  
 Shuffle, iPod playback ..... 53  
 Signal flow ..... 17  
 SIGNAL INFO ..... 36  
 SILENT CINEMA ..... 43  
 SILENT CINEMA indicator ..... 26  
 Simple remote mode control,  
   iPod playback ..... 52  
 Simplified remote control ..... 90  
 SL LEVEL, sound field parameter ..... 63  
 SLEEP indicator ..... 26  
 Sleep timer ..... 37  
 Sound field parameter ..... 61  
 Sound field parameter settings ..... 59  
 Sound field program information ..... 111  
 Sound field program selection ..... 38  
 Sound field programs ..... 38  
 Sound field programs with  
   headphones ..... 43  
 Sound field programs without surround  
   speakers ..... 43  
 Source name change ..... 86  
 SOURCE, operation mode selector ..... 28  
 SP, automatic setup ..... 30  
 SP2 speaker terminals ..... 14  
 Speaker cable connection ..... 14  
 Speaker configurations,  
   SPEAKER MENU ..... 67  
 Speaker connection ..... 12  
 Speaker distance, automatic setup ..... 30  
 Speaker distance,  
   SPEAKER MENU ..... 68  
 SPEAKER IMP., advanced setup ..... 94  
 Speaker impedance setting ..... 25  
 Speaker impedance, advanced setup ..... 94  
 Speaker level adjustment ..... 45  
 Speaker level, automatic setup ..... 30  
 Speaker level, SPEAKER MENU ..... 68  
 Speaker placement ..... 10  
 Speaker setting optimization ..... 29  
 Speaker terminals ..... 9  
 SPEAKER, dynamic range ..... 71  
 Speakers, dynamic range ..... 71  
 Specifications ..... 113  
 Spectacle, sound field program ..... 42
- Sports, sound field program ..... 41  
 SR LEVEL, sound field parameter ..... 63  
 Standard, sound field program ..... 42  
 STANDBY CHARGE,  
   INPUT MENU ..... 74  
 Standby mode ..... 25  
 START PAIRING, INPUT MENU ..... 74  
 Start pairing, INPUT MENU ..... 74  
 Stereo playback ..... 43  
 STEREO, sound field program ..... 43  
 Straight Enhancer,  
   sound field program ..... 43  
 STRAIGHT mode ..... 44  
 Subwoofer ..... 11  
 SUBWOOFER jack ..... 22  
 SUBWOOFER PHASE,  
   speaker configurations ..... 68  
 Subwoofer phase,  
   speaker configurations ..... 68  
 SUBWOOFER PRE OUT jack ..... 22  
 Supplied accessories ..... 3  
 SUR, sound field parameter ..... 64  
 SUR.DECODE,  
   sound field program ..... 43  
 SUR. L/R SP,  
   speaker configurations ..... 67  
 SUR.B L/R SP,  
   speaker configurations ..... 68  
 SUR.BACK/PRESENCE PRE OUT  
   jacks ..... 22  
 Surround back left/right speaker ..... 11  
 Surround back left/right speakers,  
   speaker configurations ..... 68  
 Surround back speaker ..... 11  
 Surround Decode,  
   sound field program ..... 43  
 Surround decoder mode ..... 43  
 SURROUND L/R jacks ..... 22  
 Surround left/right speaker ..... 11  
 Surround left/right speakers,  
   speaker configurations ..... 67  
 SURROUND PRE OUT jacks ..... 21  
 SYSTEM MEMORY ..... 78  
 System settings ..... 78
- **T**
- Test tone, SPEAKER MENU ..... 69  
 The Bottom Line,  
   sound field program ..... 40  
 The Roxy Theatre,  
   sound field program ..... 40  
 Total quality adjustment ..... 45  
 TONE BYPASS, Audio settings ..... 72  
 Tone bypass, Audio settings ..... 72  
 Transmit indicator ..... 27  
 Troubleshooting ..... 96  
 Tuner frequency step,  
   advanced setup ..... 95  
 TUNER FRQ STEP, advanced setup ..... 95  
 Tuner indicators ..... 26  
 Turning off ..... 25  
 Turning on ..... 25  
 Turntable connection ..... 21  
 TV control, remote control ..... 81

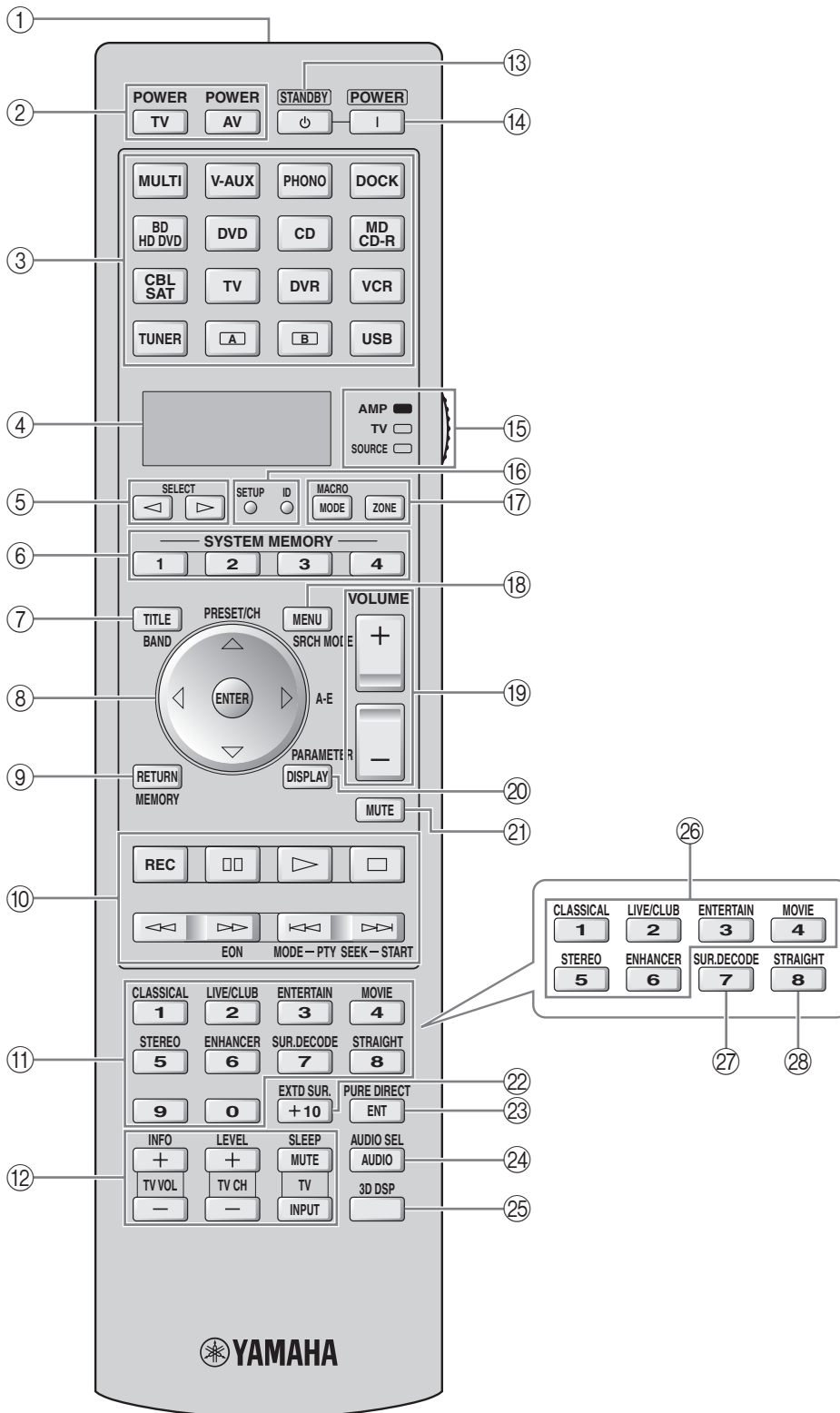
TV monitor connection .....	18
TV, operation mode selector .....	28
<b>■ U</b>	
Unit for the speaker distance	
adjustment .....	68
UNIT, speaker distance .....	68
Unprocessed input source listening .....	44
<b>■ V</b>	
VCR connection .....	21
Vertical dialogue position,	
sound field parameter .....	60
VIDEO AUX jacks .....	23
VIDEO CONV., VIDEO MENU .....	72
Video conversion, VIDEO MENU .....	72
VIDEO jacks .....	15
Video jacks .....	15
Video signal flow .....	17
Video signals, HDMI .....	16
Village Vanguard,	
sound field program .....	40
Virtual CINEMA DSP .....	43
VIRTUAL indicator .....	26
VOL. TRIM, INPUT MENU .....	74
VOLTAGE SELECTOR .....	4
VOLUME level indicator .....	26
Volume trim, INPUT MENU .....	74
VOLUME, zone set .....	77
<b>■ W</b>	
Wake on RS-232C access,	
advanced setup .....	94
Warehouse Loft,	
sound field program .....	40
WRENCH HOLDER .....	14
<b>■ Y</b>	
YBA-10 connection .....	22
YDS-11 connection .....	22
YPAO .....	29
YPAO indicator .....	26
<b>■ Z</b>	
Zone 2/3 component connection .....	91
Zone 2/3 control .....	92
Zone 2/Zone 3 amplifier, zone set .....	77
Zone 2/Zone 3 initial volume,	
zone set .....	77
Zone 2/Zone 3 maximum volume,	
zone set .....	77
Zone 2/Zone 3 volume, zone set .....	77
Zone indicators .....	27
ZONE OUT jacks .....	9
Zone set, OPTION MENU .....	77
ZONE2/ZONE3 indicators .....	27

“**Ⓐ** MASTER ON/OFF” or  
“**ⓓ** DVD” (example) indicates the  
name of the parts on the front panel  
or the remote control. Refer to the  
attached sheet or the pages at the  
end of this manual for the  
information about each position of  
the parts.

## ■ Front panel




## ■ Remote control

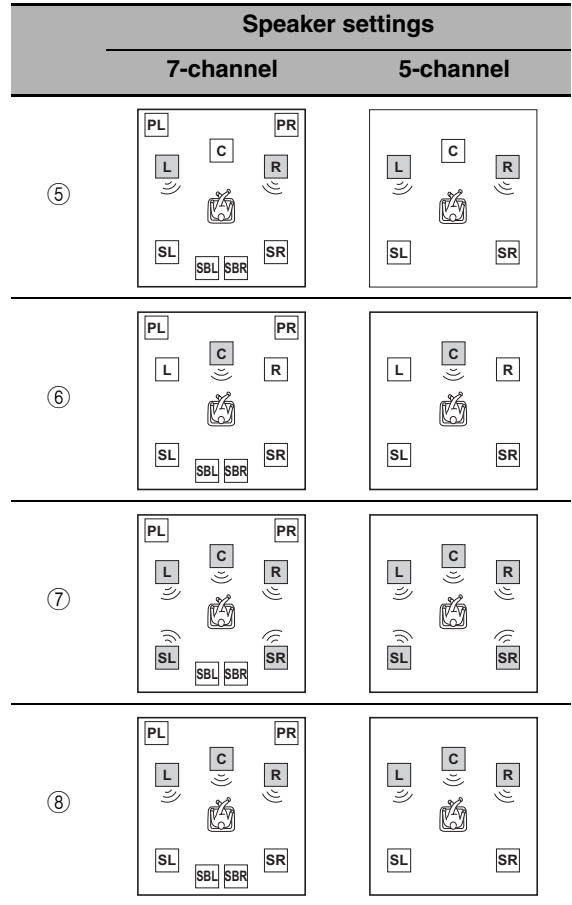
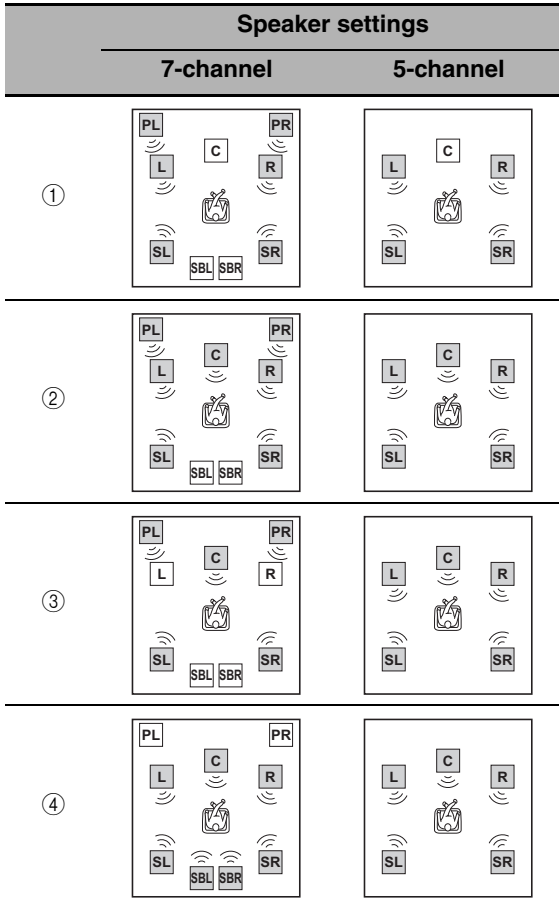


# Sound output in each sound field program

- L Front left speaker
- C Center speaker
- R Front right speaker
- SL Surround left speaker
- SR Surround right speaker
- SBL Surround back left speaker
- SBR Surround back right speaker
- PL Presence left speaker
- PR Presence right speaker

 Speaker from which sound is being output

Speaker from which no sound is being output



\*1 DOLBY DIGITAL EX / DOLBY DIGITAL PL II x / **Dolby** ES : OFF

\*2 DOLBY DIGITAL EX / DOLBY DIGITAL PL II x / **Dolby** ES : ON or discrete 6.1/7.1-channel audio signals are input.

Program	3D	Input audio source			
		2-channel (monaural)	2-channel (stereo)	5.1-channel*1	6.1/7.1-channel*2
CLASSICAL Hall in Munich Hall in Vienna Hall in Amsterdam Church in Freiburg Chamber	ON	①	①	②	②
	OFF				
LIVE/CLUB Village Vanguard Warehouse Loft Cellar Club The Roxy Theatre The Bottom Line		①	①	②	④
ENTERTAINMENT Sports Action Game Roleplaying Game Music Video Recital/Opera	ON	②	②	②	②
	OFF				
MOVIE Standard Spectacle Sci-Fi Adventure Drama		⑦	④	②	④
MOVIE Mono Movie	ON	②	②	②	②
	OFF	③	②	②	④
STEREO 2ch Stereo	--	⑤	⑤	⑤	⑤
STEREO 7ch Stereo MUSIC ENHANCER 7ch Enhancer	--	④	④	④	④
SUR.DECODE Surround Decoder (Pro Logic) (PLII Movie) (PLII Game)	--	⑥	⑦	⑦	④
SUR.DECODE Surround Decoder (PLII Music)	--	⑧	⑦	⑦	④
SUR.DECODE Surround Decoder (PLIIX Movie) (PLIIX Game) (Neo:6 Cinema)	--	⑥	④	⑦	④
SUR.DECODE Surround Decoder (PLIIX Music) (Neo:6 Music)	--	⑧	④	⑦	④
STRAIGHT Pure Direct MUSIC ENHANCER Straight Enhancer	--	⑤	⑤	⑦	④



# GPL/LGPL

## ■ GNU GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE

Version 2, June 1991

Copyright (C) 1989, 1991 Free Software Foundation, Inc. 59 Temple Place, Suite 330, Boston, MA 02111-1307 USA Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute verbatim copies of this license document, but changing it is not allowed.

### Preamble

The licenses for most software are designed to take away your freedom to share and change it. By contrast, the GNU General Public License is intended to guarantee your freedom to share and change free software—to make sure the software is free for all its users. This General Public License applies to most of the Free Software Foundation's software and to any other program whose authors commit to using it. (Some other Free Software Foundation software is covered by the GNU Library General Public License instead.) You can apply it to your programs, too.

When we speak of free software, we are referring to freedom, not price. Our General Public Licenses are designed to make sure that you have the freedom to distribute copies of free software (and charge for this service if you wish), that you receive source code or can get it if you want it, that you can change the software or use pieces of it in new free programs; and that you know you can do these things.

To protect your rights, we need to make restrictions that forbid anyone to deny you these rights or to ask you to surrender the rights. These restrictions translate to certain responsibilities for you if you distribute copies of the software, or if you modify it.

For example, if you distribute copies of such a program, whether gratis or for a fee, you must give the recipients all the rights that you have. You must make sure that they, too, receive or can get the source code. And you must show them these terms so they know their rights.

We protect your rights with two steps: (1) copyright the software, and (2) offer you this license which gives you legal permission to copy, distribute and/or modify the software.

Also, for each author's protection and ours, we want to make certain that everyone understands that there is no warranty for this free software. If the software is modified by someone else and passed on, we want its recipients to know that what they have is not the original, so that any problems introduced by others will not reflect on the original authors' reputations.

Finally, any free program is threatened constantly by software patents. We wish to avoid the danger that redistributors of a free program will individually obtain patent licenses, in effect making the program proprietary. To prevent this, we have made it clear that any patent must be licensed for everyone's free use or not licensed at all.

The precise terms and conditions for copying, distribution and modification follow.

### TERMS AND CONDITIONS FOR COPYING, DISTRIBUTION AND MODIFICATION

0. This License applies to any program or other work which contains a notice placed by the copyright holder saying it may be distributed under the terms of this General Public License. The "Program", below, refers to any such program or work, and a "work based on the Program" means either the Program or any derivative work under copyright law: that is to say, a work containing the Program or a portion of it, either verbatim or with modifications and/or translated into another language. (Hereinafter, translation is included without limitation in the term "modification".) Each licensee is addressed as "you".

Activities other than copying, distribution and modification are not covered by this License; they are outside its scope. The act of running the Program is not restricted, and the output from the Program is covered only if its contents constitute a work based on the Program (independent of having been made by running the Program). Whether that is true depends on what the Program does.

1. You may copy and distribute verbatim copies of the Program's source code as you receive it, in any medium, provided that you conspicuously and appropriately publish on each copy an appropriate copyright notice and disclaimer of warranty; keep intact all the notices that refer to this License and to the absence of any warranty; and give any other recipients of the Program a copy of this License along with the Program.

You may charge a fee for the physical act of transferring a copy, and you may at your option offer warranty protection in exchange for a fee.

2. You may modify your copy or copies of the Program or any portion of it, thus forming a work based on the Program, and copy and distribute such modifications or work under the terms of Section 1 above, provided that you also meet all of these conditions:
  - a) You must cause the modified files to carry prominent notices stating that you changed the files and the date of any change.
  - b) You must cause any work that you distribute or publish, that in whole or in part contains or is derived from the Program or any part thereof, to be licensed as a whole at no charge to all third parties under the terms of this License.
  - c) If the modified program normally reads commands interactively when run, you must cause it, when started running for such interactive use in the most ordinary way, to print or display an announcement including an appropriate copyright notice and a notice that there is no warranty (or else, saying that you provide a warranty) and that users may redistribute the program under

these conditions, and telling the user how to view a copy of this License. (Exception: if the Program itself is interactive but does not normally print such an announcement, your work based on the Program is not required to print an announcement.)

These requirements apply to the modified work as a whole. If identifiable sections of that work are not derived from the Program, and can be reasonably considered independent and separate works in themselves, then this License, and its terms, do not apply to those sections when you distribute them as separate works. But when you distribute the same sections as part of a whole which is a work based on the Program, the distribution of the whole must be on the terms of this License, whose permissions for other licensees extend to the entire whole, and thus to each and every part regardless of who wrote it.

Thus, it is not the intent of this section to claim rights or contest your rights to work written entirely by you; rather, the intent is to exercise the right to control the distribution of derivative or collective works based on the Program.

In addition, mere aggregation of another work not based on the Program with the Program (or with a work based on the Program) on a volume of a storage or distribution medium does not bring the other work under the scope of this License.

3. You may copy and distribute the Program (or a work based on it, under Section 2) in object code or executable form under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above provided that you also do one of the following:
  - a) Accompany it with the complete corresponding machine-readable source code, which must be distributed under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above on a medium customarily used for software interchange; or,
  - b) Accompany it with a written offer, valid for at least three years, to give any third party, for a charge no more than your cost of physically performing source distribution, a complete machine-readable copy of the corresponding source code, to be distributed under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above on a medium customarily used for software interchange; or,
  - c) Accompany it with the information you received as to the offer to distribute corresponding source code. (This alternative is allowed only for noncommercial distribution and only if you received the program in object code or executable form with such an offer, in accord with Subsection b above.)

The source code for a work means the preferred form of the work for making modifications to it. For an executable work, complete source code means all the source code for all modules it contains, plus any associated interface definition files, plus the scripts used to control compilation and installation of the executable. However, as a special exception, the source code distributed need not include anything that is normally distributed (in either source or binary form) with the major components (compiler, kernel, and so on) of the operating system on which the executable runs, unless that component itself accompanies the executable.

If distribution of executable or object code is made by offering access to copy from a designated place, then offering equivalent access to copy the source code from the same place counts as distribution of the source code, even though third parties are not compelled to copy the source along with the object code.

4. You may not copy, modify, sublicense, or distribute the Program except as expressly provided under this License. Any attempt otherwise to copy, modify, sublicense or distribute the Program is void, and will automatically terminate your rights under this License. However, parties who have received copies, or rights, from you under this License will not have their licenses terminated so long as such parties remain in full compliance.
5. You are not required to accept this License, since you have not signed it. However, nothing else grants you permission to modify or distribute the Program or its derivative works. These actions are prohibited by law if you do not accept this License. Therefore, by modifying or distributing the Program (or any work based on the Program), you indicate your acceptance of this License to do so, and all its terms and conditions for copying, distributing or modifying the Program or works based on it.
6. Each time you redistribute the Program (or any work based on the Program), the recipient automatically receives a license from the original licensor to copy, distribute or modify the Program subject to these terms and conditions. You may not impose any further restrictions on the recipients' exercise of the rights granted herein. You are not responsible for enforcing compliance by third parties to this License.
7. If, as a consequence of a court judgment or allegation of patent infringement or for any other reason (not limited to patent issues), conditions are imposed on you (whether by court order, agreement or otherwise) that contradict the conditions of this License, they do not excuse you from the conditions of this License. If you cannot distribute so as to satisfy simultaneously your obligations under this License and any other pertinent obligations, then as a consequence you may not distribute the Program at all. For example, if a patent license would not permit royalty-free redistribution of the Program by all those who receive copies directly or indirectly through you, then the only way you could satisfy both it and this License would be to refrain entirely from distribution of the Program.

If any portion of this section is held invalid or unenforceable under any particular circumstance, the balance of the section is intended to apply and the section as a whole is intended to apply in other circumstances.

It is not the purpose of this section to induce you to infringe any patents or other property right claims or to contest validity of any such claims; this section has the sole purpose of protecting the integrity of the free software distribution system, which is implemented by public license practices. Many people have made generous contributions to the wide range of software distributed through that system in reliance on consistent application of that system; it is up to the author/donor to decide if he or she is willing to distribute software through any other system and a licensee cannot impose that choice.

This section is intended to make thoroughly clear what is believed to be a consequence of the rest of this License.

- If the distribution and/or use of the Program is restricted in certain countries either by patents or by copyrighted interfaces, the original copyright holder who places the Program under this License may add an explicit geographical distribution limitation excluding those countries, so that distribution is permitted only in or among countries not thus excluded. In such case, this License incorporates the limitation as if written in the body of this License.
- The Free Software Foundation may publish revised and/or new versions of the General Public License from time to time. Such new versions will be similar in spirit to the present version, but may differ in detail to address new problems or concerns.

Each version is given a distinguishing version number. If the Program specifies a version number of this License which applies to it and "any later version", you have the option of following the terms and conditions either of that version or of any later version published by the Free Software Foundation. If the Program does not specify a version number of this License, you may choose any version ever published by the Free Software Foundation.

- If you wish to incorporate parts of the Program into other free programs whose distribution conditions are different, write to the author to ask for permission. For software which is copyrighted by the Free Software Foundation, write to the Free Software Foundation; we sometimes make exceptions for this. Our decision will be guided by the two goals of preserving the free status of all derivatives of our free software and of promoting the sharing and reuse of software generally.

## NO WARRANTY

- BECAUSE THE PROGRAM IS LICENSED FREE OF CHARGE, THERE IS NO WARRANTY FOR THE PROGRAM, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW. EXCEPT WHEN OTHERWISE STATED IN WRITING THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND/OR OTHER PARTIES PROVIDE THE PROGRAM "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE PROGRAM IS WITH YOU. SHOULD THE PROGRAM PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION.
- IN NO EVENT UNLESS REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW OR AGREED TO IN WRITING WILL ANY COPYRIGHT HOLDER, OR ANY OTHER PARTY WHO MAY MODIFY AND/OR REDISTRIBUTE THE PROGRAM AS PERMITTED ABOVE, BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY GENERAL, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE PROGRAM (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOSS OF DATA OR DATA BEING RENDERED INACCURATE OR LOSSES SUSTAINED BY YOU OR THIRD PARTIES OR A FAILURE OF THE PROGRAM TO OPERATE WITH ANY OTHER PROGRAMS), EVEN IF SUCH HOLDER OR OTHER PARTY HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

## END OF TERMS AND CONDITIONS

### How to Apply These Terms to Your New Programs

If you develop a new program, and you want it to be of the greatest possible use to the public, the best way to achieve this is to make it free software which everyone can redistribute and change under these terms.

To do so, attach the following notices to the program. It is safest to attach them to the start of each source file to most effectively convey the exclusion of warranty; and each file should have at least the "copyright" line and a pointer to where the full notice is found.

<one line to give the program's name and a brief idea of what it does.>

Copyright (C) <year> <name of author>

This program is free software; you can redistribute it and/or modify it under the terms of the GNU General Public License as published by the Free Software Foundation; either version 2 of the License, or (at your option) any later version.

This program is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU General Public License for more details.

You should have received a copy of the GNU General Public License along with this program; if not, write to the Free Software Foundation, Inc., 59 Temple Place, Suite 330, Boston, MA 02111-1307 USA.

Also add information on how to contact you by electronic and paper mail.

If the program is interactive, make it output a short notice like this when it starts in an interactive mode:

Gnomovision version 69, Copyright (C) year name of author Gnomovision comes with ABSOLUTELY NO WARRANTY; for details type 'show w'. This is free software, and you are welcome to redistribute it under certain conditions; type 'show c' for details.

The hypothetical commands 'show w' and 'show c' should show the appropriate parts of the General Public License. Of course, the commands you use may be called something other than 'show w' and 'show c'; they could even be mouse-clicks or menu items—whatever suits your program.

You should also get your employer (if you work as a programmer) or your school, if any, to sign a "copyright disclaimer" for the program, if necessary. Here is a sample; alter the names:

Yoyodyne, Inc., hereby disclaims all copyright interest in the program 'Gnomovision' (which makes passes at compilers) written by James Hacker.

<signature of Ty Coon>, 1 April 1989

Ty Coon, President of Vice

This General Public License does not permit incorporating your program into proprietary programs. If your program is a subroutine library, you may consider it more useful to permit linking proprietary applications with the library. If this is what you want to do, use the GNU Library General Public License instead of this License.

## GNU LESSER GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE

### Version 2.1, February 1999

Copyright (C) 1991, 1999 Free Software Foundation, Inc.  
59 Temple Place, Suite 330, Boston, MA 02111-1307 USA

Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute verbatim copies of this license document, but changing it is not allowed.

[This is the first released version of the Lesser GPL. It also counts as the successor of the GNU Library Public License, version 2, hence the version number 2.1.]

### Preamble

The licenses for most software are designed to take away your freedom to share and change it. By contrast, the GNU General Public Licenses are intended to guarantee your freedom to share and change free software—to make sure the software is free for all its users.

This license, the Lesser General Public License, applies to some specially designated software packages—typically libraries—of the Free Software Foundation and other authors who decide to use it. You can use it too, but we suggest you first think carefully about whether this license or the ordinary General Public License is the better strategy to use in any particular case, based on the explanations below.

When we speak of free software, we are referring to freedom of use, not price. Our General Public Licenses are designed to make sure that you have the freedom to distribute copies of free software (and charge for this service if you wish); that you receive source code or can get it if you want it; that you can change the software and use pieces of it in new free programs; and that you are informed that you can do these things.

To protect your rights, we need to make restrictions that forbid distributors to deny you these rights or to ask you to surrender these rights. These restrictions translate to certain responsibilities for you if you distribute copies of the library or if you modify it.

For example, if you distribute copies of the library, whether gratis or for a fee, you must give the recipients all the rights that we gave you. You must make sure that they, too, receive or can get the source code. If you link other code with the library, you must provide complete object files to the recipients, so that they can relink them with the library after making changes to the library and recompiling it. And you must show them these terms so they know their rights.

We protect your rights with a two-step method: (1) we copyright the library, and (2) we offer you this license, which gives you legal permission to copy, distribute and/or modify the library.

To protect each distributor, we want to make it very clear that there is no warranty for the free library. Also, if the library is modified by someone else and passed on, the recipients should know that what they have is not the original version, so that the original author's reputation will not be affected by problems that might be introduced by others.

Finally, software patents pose a constant threat to the existence of any free program. We wish to make sure that a company cannot effectively restrict the users of a free program by obtaining a restrictive license from a patent holder. Therefore, we insist that any patent license obtained for a version of the library must be consistent with the full freedom of use specified in this license.

Most GNU software, including some libraries, is covered by the ordinary GNU General Public License. This license, the GNU Lesser General Public License, applies to certain designated libraries, and is quite different from the ordinary General Public License. We use this license for certain libraries in order to permit linking those libraries into non-free programs.

When a program is linked with a library, whether statically or using a shared library, the combination of the two is legally speaking a combined work, a derivative of the original library. The ordinary General Public License therefore permits such linking only if the entire combination fits its criteria of freedom. The Lesser General Public License permits more lax criteria for linking other code with the library.

We call this license the "Lesser" General Public License because it does Less to protect the user's freedom than the ordinary General Public License. It also provides other free software developers Less of an advantage over competing non-free programs. These disadvantages are the reason we use the ordinary General Public License for many libraries.

However, the Lesser license provides advantages in certain special circumstances.

For example, on rare occasions, there may be a special need to encourage the widest possible use of a certain library, so that it becomes a de-facto standard. To achieve this, non-free programs must be allowed to use the library. A more frequent case is that a free library does the same job as widely used non-free libraries. In this case, there is little to gain by limiting the free library to free software only, so we use the Lesser General Public License.

In other cases, permission to use a particular library in non-free programs enables a greater number of people to use a large body of free software. For example, permission to use the GNU C Library in non-free programs enables many more people to use the whole GNU operating system, as well as its variant, the GNU/Linux operating system.

Although the Lesser General Public License is less protective of the users' freedom, it does ensure that the user of a program that is linked with the Library has the freedom and the wherewithal to run that program using a modified version of the Library.

The precise terms and conditions for copying, distribution and modification follow. Pay close attention to the difference between a "work based on the library" and a "work that uses the library". The former contains code derived from the library, whereas the latter must be combined with the library in order to run.

## TERMS AND CONDITIONS FOR COPYING, DISTRIBUTION AND MODIFICATION

0. This License Agreement applies to any software library or other program which contains a notice placed by the copyright holder or other authorized party saying it may be distributed under the terms of this Lesser General Public License (also called "this License"). Each licensee is addressed as "you".

A "library" means a collection of software functions and/or data prepared so as to be conveniently linked with application programs (which use some of those functions and data) to form executables.

The "Library", below, refers to any such software library or work which has been distributed under these terms. A "work based on the Library" means either the Library or any derivative work under copyright law: that is to say, a work containing the Library or a portion of it, either verbatim or with modifications and/or translated straightforwardly into another language. (Hereinafter, translation is included without limitation in the term "modification".)

"Source code" for a work means the preferred form of the work for making modifications to it. For a library, complete source code means all the source code for all modules it contains, plus any associated interface definition files, plus the scripts used to control compilation and installation of the library.

Activities other than copying, distribution and modification are not covered by this License; they are outside its scope. The act of running a program using the Library is not restricted, and output from such a program is covered only if its contents constitute a work based on the Library (independent of the use of the Library in a tool for writing it). Whether that is true depends on what the Library does and what the program that uses the Library does.

1. You may copy and distribute verbatim copies of the Library's complete source code as you receive it, in any medium, provided that you conspicuously and appropriately publish on each copy an appropriate copyright notice and disclaimer of warranty; keep intact all the notices that refer to this License and to the absence of any warranty; and distribute a copy of this License along with the Library.

You may charge a fee for the physical act of transferring a copy, and you may at your option offer warranty protection in exchange for a fee.

2. You may modify your copy or copies of the Library or any portion of it, thus forming a work based on the Library, and copy and distribute such modifications or work under the terms of Section 1 above, provided that you also meet all of these conditions:

- The modified work must itself be a software library.
- You must cause the files modified to carry prominent notices stating that you changed the files and the date of any change.
- You must cause the whole of the work to be licensed at no charge to all third parties under the terms of this License.
- If a facility in the modified Library refers to a function or a table of data to be supplied by an application program that uses the facility, other than as an argument passed when the facility is invoked, then you must make a good faith effort to ensure that, in the event an application does not supply such function or table, the facility still operates, and performs whatever part of its purpose remains meaningful.

(For example, a function in a library to compute square roots has a purpose that is entirely well-defined independent of the application. Therefore, Subsection 2d requires that any application-supplied function or table used by this function must be optional: if the application does not supply it, the square root function must still compute square roots.)

These requirements apply to the modified work as a whole. If identifiable sections of that work are not derived from the Library, and can be reasonably considered independent and separate works in themselves, then this License, and its terms, do not apply to those sections when you distribute them as separate works. But when you distribute the same sections as part of a whole which is a work based on the Library, the distribution of the whole must be on the terms of this License, whose permissions for other licensees extend to the entire whole, and thus to each and every part regardless of who wrote it.

Thus, it is not the intent of this section to claim rights or contest your rights to work

written entirely by you; rather, the intent is to exercise the right to control the distribution of derivative or collective works based on the Library.

In addition, mere aggregation of another work not based on the Library with the Library (or with a work based on the Library) on a volume of a storage or distribution medium does not bring the other work under the scope of this License.

3. You may opt to apply the terms of the ordinary GNU General Public License instead of this License to a given copy of the Library. (To do this, you must alter all the notices that refer to this License, so that they refer to the ordinary GNU General Public License, version 2, instead of to this License. (If a newer version than version 2 of the ordinary GNU General Public License has appeared, then you can specify that version instead if you wish.) Do not make any other change in these notices.

Once this change is made in a given copy, it is irreversible for that copy, so the ordinary GNU General Public License applies to all subsequent copies and derivative works made from that copy.

This option is useful when you wish to copy part of the code of the Library into a program that is not a library.

4. You may copy and distribute the Library (or a portion or derivative of it, under Section 2) in object code or executable form under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above provided that you accompany it with the complete corresponding machine-readable source code, which must be distributed under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above on a medium customarily used for software interchange.

If distribution of object code is made by offering access to copy from a designated place, then offering equivalent access to copy the source code from the same place satisfies the requirement to distribute the source code, even though third parties are not compelled to copy the source along with the object code.

5. A program that contains no derivative of any portion of the Library, but is designed to work with the Library by being compiled or linked with it, is called a "work that uses the Library". Such a work, in isolation, is not a derivative work of the Library, and therefore falls outside the scope of this License.

However, linking a "work that uses the Library" with the Library creates an executable that is a derivative of the Library (because it contains portions of the Library), rather than a "work that uses the library". The executable is therefore covered by this License. Section 6 states terms for distribution of such executables.

When a "work that uses the Library" uses material from a header file that is part of the Library, the object code for the work may be a derivative work of the Library even though the source code is not. Whether this is true is especially significant if the work can be linked without the Library, or if the work is itself a library. The threshold for this to be true is not precisely defined by law.

If such an object file uses only numerical parameters, data structure layouts and accessors, and small macros and small inline functions (ten lines or less in length), then the use of the object file is unrestricted, regardless of whether it is legally a derivative work. (Executables containing this object code plus portions of the Library will still fall under Section 6.)

Otherwise, if the work is a derivative of the Library, you may distribute the object code for the work under the terms of Section 6. Any executables containing that work also fall under Section 6, whether or not they are linked directly with the Library itself.

6. As an exception to the Sections above, you may also combine or link a "work that uses the Library" with the Library to produce a work containing portions of the Library, and distribute that work under terms of your choice, provided that the terms permit modification of the work for the customer's own use and reverse engineering for debugging such modifications.

You must give prominent notice with each copy of the work that the Library is used in it and that the Library and its use are covered by this License. You must supply a copy of this License. If the work during execution displays copyright notices, you must include the copyright notice for the Library among them, as well as a reference directing the user to the copy of this License. Also, you must do one of these things:

- Accompany the work with the complete corresponding machine-readable source code for the Library including whatever changes were used in the work (which must be distributed under Sections 1 and 2 above); and, if the work is an executable linked with the Library, with the complete machine-readable "work that uses the Library", as object code and/or source code, so that the user can modify the Library and then relink to produce a modified executable containing the modified Library. (It is understood that the user who changes the contents of definitions files in the Library will not necessarily be able to recompile the application to use the modified definitions.)
- Use a suitable shared library mechanism for linking with the Library. A suitable mechanism is one that (1) uses at run time a copy of the library already present on the user's computer system, rather than copying library functions into the executable, and (2) will operate properly with a modified version of the library, if the user installs one, as long as the modified version is interface-compatible with the version that the work was made with.
- Accompany the work with a written offer, valid for at least three years, to give the same user the materials specified in Subsection 6a, above, for a charge no more than the cost of performing this distribution.

- d) If distribution of the work is made by offering access to copy from a designated place, offer equivalent access to copy the above specified materials from the same place.
- e) Verify that the user has already received a copy of these materials or that you have already sent this user a copy.

For an executable, the required form of the “work that uses the Library” must include any data and utility programs needed for reproducing the executable from it. However, as a special exception, the materials to be distributed need not include anything that is normally distributed (in either source or binary form) with the major components (compiler, kernel, and so on) of the operating system on which the executable runs, unless that component itself accompanies the executable.

It may happen that this requirement contradicts the license restrictions of other proprietary libraries that do not normally accompany the operating system. Such a contradiction means you cannot use both them and the Library together in an executable that you distribute.

7. You may place library facilities that are a work based on the Library side-by-side in a single library together with other library facilities not covered by this License, and distribute such a combined library, provided that the separate distribution of the work based on the Library and of the other library facilities is otherwise permitted, and provided that you do these two things:
  - a) Accompany the combined library with a copy of the same work based on the Library, uncombined with any other library facilities. This must be distributed under the terms of the Sections above.
  - b) Give prominent notice with the combined library of the fact that part of it is a work based on the Library, and explaining where to find the accompanying uncombined form of the same work.
8. You may not copy, modify, sublicense, link with, or distribute the Library except as expressly provided under this License. Any attempt otherwise to copy, modify, sublicense, link with, or distribute the Library is void, and will automatically terminate your rights under this License. However, parties who have received copies, or rights, from you under this License will not have their licenses terminated so long as such parties remain in full compliance.
9. You are not required to accept this License, since you have not signed it. However, nothing else grants you permission to modify or distribute the Library or its derivative works. These actions are prohibited by law if you do not accept this License. Therefore, by modifying or distributing the Library (or any work based on the Library), you indicate your acceptance of this License to do so, and all its terms and conditions for copying, distributing or modifying the Library or works based on it.
10. Each time you redistribute the Library (or any work based on the Library), the recipient automatically receives a license from the original licensor to copy, distribute, link with or modify the Library subject to these terms and conditions. You may not impose any further restrictions on the recipients' exercise of the rights granted herein. You are not responsible for enforcing compliance by third parties with this License.
11. If, as a consequence of a court judgment or allegation of patent infringement or for any other reason (not limited to patent issues), conditions are imposed on you (whether by court order, agreement or otherwise) that contradict the conditions of this License, they do not excuse you from the conditions of this License. If you cannot distribute so as to satisfy simultaneously your obligations under this License and any other pertinent obligations, then as a consequence you may not distribute the Library at all. For example, if a patent license would not permit royalty-free redistribution of the Library by all those who receive copies directly or indirectly through you, then the only way you could satisfy both it and this License would be to refrain entirely from distribution of the Library.

If any portion of this section is held invalid or unenforceable under any particular circumstance, the balance of the section is intended to apply, and the section as a whole is intended to apply in other circumstances.

It is not the purpose of this section to induce you to infringe any patents or other property right claims or to contest validity of any such claims; this section has the sole purpose of protecting the integrity of the free software distribution system which is implemented by public license practices. Many people have made generous contributions to the wide range of software distributed through that system in reliance on consistent application of that system; it is up to the author/donor to decide if he or she is willing to distribute software through any other system and a licensee cannot impose that choice.

This section is intended to make thoroughly clear what is believed to be a consequence of the rest of this License.

12. If the distribution and/or use of the Library is restricted in certain countries either by patents or by copyrighted interfaces, the original copyright holder who places the Library under this License may add an explicit geographical distribution limitation excluding those countries, so that distribution is permitted only in or among countries not thus excluded. In such case, this License incorporates the limitation as if written in the body of this License.
13. The Free Software Foundation may publish revised and/or new versions of the Lesser General Public License from time to time. Such new versions will be similar in spirit to the present version, but may differ in detail to address new problems or concerns.

Each version is given a distinguishing version number. If the Library specifies a version number of this License which applies to it and “any later version”, you have the option of following the terms and conditions either of that version or of any later version published by the Free Software Foundation. If the Library does not specify a license version number, you may choose any version ever published by the Free Software Foundation.

14. If you wish to incorporate parts of the Library into other free programs whose distribution conditions are incompatible with these, write to the author to ask for permission. For software which is copyrighted by the Free Software Foundation, write to the Free Software Foundation; we sometimes make exceptions for this. Our decision will be guided by the two goals of preserving the free status of all derivatives of our free software and of promoting the sharing and reuse of software generally.

## NO WARRANTY

15. BECAUSE THE LIBRARY IS LICENSED FREE OF CHARGE, THERE IS NO WARRANTY FOR THE LIBRARY, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW. EXCEPT WHEN OTHERWISE STATED IN WRITING THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND/OR OTHER PARTIES PROVIDE THE LIBRARY “AS IS” WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE LIBRARY IS WITH YOU. SHOULD THE LIBRARY PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION.
16. IN NO EVENT UNLESS REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW OR AGREED TO IN WRITING WILL ANY COPYRIGHT HOLDER, OR ANY OTHER PARTY WHO MAY MODIFY AND/OR REDISTRIBUTE THE LIBRARY AS PERMITTED ABOVE, BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY GENERAL, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE LIBRARY (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOSS OF DATA OR DATA BEING RENDERED INACCURATE OR LOSSES SUSTAINED BY YOU OR THIRD PARTIES OR A FAILURE OF THE LIBRARY TO OPERATE WITH ANY OTHER SOFTWARE), EVEN IF SUCH HOLDER OR OTHER PARTY HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

## END OF TERMS AND CONDITIONS

### How to Apply These Terms to Your New Libraries

If you develop a new library, and you want it to be of the greatest possible use to the public, we recommend making it free software that everyone can redistribute and change. You can do so by permitting redistribution under these terms (or, alternatively, under the terms of the ordinary General Public License).

To apply these terms, attach the following notices to the library. It is safest to attach them to the start of each source file to most effectively convey the exclusion of warranty; and each file should have at least the “copyright” line and a pointer to where the full notice is found.

<one line to give the library's name and a brief idea of what it does.>

Copyright (C) <year> <name of author>

This library is free software; you can redistribute it and/or modify it under the terms of the GNU Lesser General Public License as published by the Free Software Foundation; either version 2.1 of the License, or (at your option) any later version.

This library is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU Lesser General Public License for more details.

You should have received a copy of the GNU Lesser General Public License along with this library; if not, write to the Free Software Foundation, Inc., 59 Temple Place, Suite 330, Boston, MA 02111-1307 USA

Also add information on how to contact you by electronic and paper mail.

You should also get your employer (if you work as a programmer) or your school, if any, to sign a “copyright disclaimer” for the library, if necessary. Here is a sample; alter the names:

Yoodyne, Inc., hereby disclaims all copyright interest in the library ‘Frob’ (a library for tweaking knobs) written by James Random Hacker.

<signature of Ty Coon>, 1 April 1990

Ty Coon, President of Vice

That's all there is to it!

## List of remote control codes

<b>TV</b>		CGE	03301	FINLUX	00401, 01401,	INDIANA	00401
ACURA	00101	CHANGHONG	09701		01501, 04401,	INFINITY	00801
ADDISON	01201, 01601,	CHING TAI	00101, 01201		06801	INGELEN	02201
	08401	CHUN YUN	00001, 00101,	FIRSTAR	00101, 03101	INNO HIT	06801
ADMIRAL	01301, 02201,		01201, 02701	FIRSTLINE	00101, 03301,	INNOVA	00401
	05801	CHUNG HSIN	00701, 01601,		08501	INTEQ	00201
ADVENT	09601		02701	FISHER	01401, 02001,	INTERFUNK	00401, 02201,
AGB	06801	CIMLINE	00101		02901, 04701		03301, 04601,
AIKO	01201	CINERAL	01201, 05601	FLINT	05701		06701
AKAI	00101, 00301,	CITIZEN	00301, 00901,	FORMENTI	00401, 04101	INTERVISION	00401, 03701,
	02901, 04601,		01201	FORTRESS	01301		05001
	06801, 08901,	CLARION	02701	FRONTECH	02201, 03301,	ITS	04801
	10501	CLARIVOX	00401		03701	ITT	02201, 04601,
AKURA	03701	CLATRONIC	03301, 04701	FUJITSU	08701, 10401		06901
ALBA	00101, 00401,	CONDOR	04101, 04701	FUNAI	02501, 02701,	JBL	00801
	04801, 08501	CONRAC	10301		03701	JCB	00001
AMERICA ACTION		CONTEC	00101, 02701	FUTURETECH	02701	JEAN	00101, 00601,
	02701	CRAIG	02701	GATEWAY	13301, 13401		01201, 02101,
AMPRO	09401	CROSLEY	00801	GE	00301, 00501,		03101
AMSTRAD	00101, 00401,	CROWN	00101, 00401,		00601, 01201,	JENSEN	09601
	02501, 04801,		02701, 04701,		02601, 02701,	JVC	00701, 04801,
	05101, 05301,		05201		05601, 07101,		05801, 08401,
	06801	CTC	03301		11801, 12201,		08701
ANAM	00101, 02701,	CURTIS MATHES		GEC	12601	KAISUI	00101
	03401		00301, 00501,	GELOSO	00101, 06801	KAPSCH	02201
ANAM NATIONAL			00801, 00901,	GENEXXA	00101	KARCHER	07701
	03401, 08301		01301, 01801,	GIBRALTER	02201	KATHREIN	07001
ANITECH	00101		02001, 02301,	GOLDSTAR	00201, 00301	KEC	02701
AOC	00101, 00301,		05601, 08901,		00301, 00401,	KENDO	00401
	00901, 01201,	CXC	11801, 12201		01701, 02001,	KENWOOD	00301
	01301, 01601,	DAEWOO			02601, 05001	KNEISSEL	03501, 05401
	02601, 02701,		00101, 00301,	GOODMANS	00401, 04801,	KOLIN	00701, 01601,
	05601		00401, 01201,		04901, 08201		02701
APEX DIGITAL	09301, 09701,		01601, 02001,	GOREMJE	04701	KORPEL	00401
	09901		02401, 02601,	GRADIENTE	00701, 02401	KOYODA	00101
ASA	01401		02701, 04901,	GRAETZ	02201, 04601	KTV	00301, 02701
AUDIOSONIC	00401, 01701		05601, 07901,	GRANADA	00401, 02901,	L&S ELECTRONIC	
AWA	00101	DANSAI	08201, 13101		04301, 06801		10301
BANG & OLUFSEN		DAYTON		GRANDIN	07701	LEYCO	00401, 03701
	07201	DE GRAAF	02901, 06901	GRUNDIG	00401, 02801,	LG	00301, 00401,
BASIC	00101	DECCA	00401, 06801		06301, 07001,		00901, 01601,
BAUR	00401, 04601,	DENON	01801	GRUNPY	07401		02601, 09001
	06701	DIGATRON	00401	HALLMARK	02701	LIESENK & TTER	
BAYSONIC	02701	DIXI	00101, 00401	HANKOOK	00301, 02601,		00401
BEAUMARK	02601	DUMONT	00201		02701	LOEWE	06701
BEKO	04701, 06201,	DWIN	09201, 10101	HANSEATIC	00401, 04101,	LUXOR	04501, 04601
	09001, 09101	ECE	00401		04601, 05201,	LXI	00501, 00801,
BELL & HOWELL		ELBE	03501		07001		02001, 02101,
	02001	ELECTROBAND		HANTAREX	06801		02601
BEON	00401	ELIN	00401, 06901	HARMAN/KARDON	00801	M ELECTRONIC	
BLAUPUNKT	02801	ELITE	04101		02701		00101, 00401,
BLUE SKY	08501, 11401	ELTA	00101	HARVARD	02701		01401, 01501,
BONDSTEC	03301	EMERSON	02001, 02601,	HAVERMY	01301		01701, 02201,
BRADFORD	02701		02701, 03101,	HCM	00101, 05101		03801, 04401,
BRANDT	01701, 04201		04601, 05801,	HELLO KITTY	05601		04901, 06001
BROKSONIC	03101, 05801	ENVISION	00301, 10601	HINARI	00101, 00401	MAGNADYNE	03301, 06801
BUSH	00101, 00101,	EPSON	11001	HISAWA	05701	MAGNAFON	06801
	00401, 04801,	ERRES	00401	HITACHI	00101, 00301,	MAGNAVOX	00301, 00801,
	04901, 08501,	ETHER	00101, 00301		01201, 01501,		12001, 12601
	11401	ETRON	00101		01701, 01801,	MANESTH	03701, 04101
BYDESIGN	14301, 14401,	EUROPHON	06801		02201, 02601,	MARANTZ	00301, 00401,
	14501, 14601	FERGUSON	00401, 01001,		03001, 04501,		00801, 07001
CANDLE	00301		01701, 03201,		06101, 06901,	MARK	00401
CARNIVALE	00301		03801, 04201,		07301, 11701,	MATSUI	00101, 00401,
CARVER	00801, 02401		07101	HUA TUN	12101		02901, 04801,
CASCADE	00101	FIDELITY	04601	HUANYU	00101		06301, 06801
CATHAY	00401	FINLANDIA	02901, 04401		04901	MATSUSHITA	03401, 08301
CCE	00401			HYPSON	00401, 03701	MEDIATOR	00401
CELEBRITY	00001			ICE	03701, 04801	MEDION	08501, 10301,
CELERA	09701			IMPERIAL	03301, 04701,		11401
CENTURION	00401				05201	MEGATRON	01801, 02601

MEMOREX	00101, 01901, 02001, 02601, 03401, 05801, 11401	PHILCO	00301, 00401, 00801, 01801, 02601, 02701, 03301, 05801, 13101	SAMSUNG	00101, 00301, 00401, 00901, 01101, 01201, 02001, 02601, 03701, 04701, 07001, 07401, 07801, 08901, 09801, 10501, 10701	TATUNG	00101, 00401, 00601, 00801, 00901, 02001, 02101, 06801
METZ	05501					TCM	10301
MGA	00301, 01901, 02601	PHILIPS	00001, 00301, 00401, 00601, 00801, 01201, 01601, 02601, 04901, 07001, 08801, 12601	SANSEI	05601	TEAC	00101, 00401, 03701, 05101, 05201, 05701, 08501, 11401
MICROMAXX	10301			SANSUI	05801	TEC	03301
MICROSTAR	10301			SANYO	01401, 02001, 02701, 02901, 04301, 10201	TECHNEMA	04101
MIDLAND	00201, 00501, 00601	PHONOLA	00401	PILOT	00301	TECHNICS	00601, 03401, 08301
MINERVA	06301	PILOT	00301	PIONEER	01701, 02201, 02301, 03801, 08601, 09501, 11301	TECHWOOD	00601
MINOKA	05101			SBR	00401	TECO	00101, 00601, 01201, 01301, 02601, 03701, 08401
MITSUBISHI	00301, 01301, 01601, 01901, 02001, 02601, 02701, 03101, 03401, 06701, 11201, 11901	PORTLAND	01201	SCHAUB LORENZ	04601	TEKNIKA	00801, 00901, 01201, 01901, 02701
MIVAR	03901, 04001, 06801, 07601	PRANDONI-PRINCE	06801	SCHNEIDER	00401, 03301, 04801, 08501	TELEFUNKEN	01701, 03601, 04201, 08001, 08901
MOTOROLA	01301	PRIMA	09601	SCOTCH	02601	TELEMEISTER	04101
MTC	00301, 00901, 06701	PRISM	00601	SCOTT	02601, 02701, 03101	TELETECH	00101
MULTITECH	00101, 02701	PROFEX	00101, 04601	SEARS	00501, 00801, 02001, 02101, 02501, 02601	TENSAI	04101
MYRYAD	07001	PROSCAN	00501	SEG	03701, 08501	TERA	00301
NAD	02101, 02601, 04601, 11301	PROTECH	00101, 00401, 03301, 03701, 05201, 08501	SEI	06801	THOMSON	01701, 03801, 07101, 08001, 12501
NEC	00101, 00301, 00601, 02001, 02101, 02401, 02601, 05701, 06501, 13201	PROTON	00101, 00301, 02601	SELECO	02201, 03501	THORN	00401, 01401, 04601, 06701
NECKERMANN	00401, 07001	PULSAR	00201	SEMIVOX	02701	TMK	02601
NEI	00401	QUASAR	00601, 03401, 08301	SEMP	02101	TNCI	00201
NETSAT	00401	QUELLE	00401, 01401, 04601, 06701	SHARP	00301, 01301, 08301	TOSHIBA	00901, 02001, 02101, 06601, 07801, 08301, 10901, 12101, 12301, 13001, 13201
NEWAVE	00101, 01201, 01301, 02601	RADIOLA	00401	SHEN YING	00101, 01201	TRIUMPH	06801
NIKKAI	00401, 03701	RADIOMARELLI	06801	SHENG CHIA	00101, 01301, 03101	TUNTEX	00101, 00301, 01201
NIKKO	00301, 01201, 02601	RADIOHACK	00301, 00501, 02001, 02601, 02701	SIAREM	06801	TVS	05801
NOKIA	04601, 05901, 06001, 06901, 08101	RCA	00001, 00301, 00501, 01101, 01201, 02601, 08601, 11501, 11801, 13901, 12201, 12501, 12601, 12801	SIEMENS	00401, 02801	UHER	04101
NORCENT	09301, 10801			SINUDYNE	06801	UNIVERSUM	00401, 01401, 01501, 03701, 04401, 04701, 06401
NORDMENDE	01701, 03801, 07101	REALISTIC	00301, 02001, 02601, 02701	SKANTIC	04501	VECTOR RESEARCH	00301
NTC	01201	REDIFFUSION	04601	SKY	00401	VESTEL	00401
OCEANIC	02201, 04601	REOC	09001	SKYGIANT	02701	VICTOR	00701, 03401, 08301, 08401
ONWA	02701, 05301	REVOX	00401	SKYWORTH	00401	VIDEOSAT	03301
OPTIMUS	02001, 02301, 03401, 08301	REX	02201, 03501, 03701	SOLAVOX	02201	VIDIKRON	00801
OPTONICA	01301	RFT	05201	SONITRON	02901	VIDTECH	02601
ORION	00401, 03101, 04101, 05801, 06801	R-LINE	00401	SONOKO	00101, 00401	VIEWSONIC	13301
OSAKI	03701, 05101	ROADSTAR	00101, 03701, 05201	SONOLOR	02201, 02901	VISION	04101
OTTO VERSAND	00401, 04101, 06701, 07001	RUNCO	00201, 00301, 06501, 07501	SONTEC	00401	VOXSON	02201
PALLADIUM	04701, 05201	SABA	01701, 02201, 03801, 04201	SONY	00001, 08301, 11101, 11601, 12701, 12901	WALTHAM	04501
PANAMA	03701	SACCS	03201	SOUNDDESIGN	02601, 02701	WARDS	00301, 00801, 02601, 11301
PANASONIC	00401, 00601, 00801, 02201, 03401, 08301, 12401	SAGEM	07701	SOUNDWAVE	00401, 05201	WATSON	00401, 04101
PATHE CINEMA	03201, 04101	SAISHO	00101, 03701, 06801	SOWA	00601, 00901, 01201, 02101, 02601	WAYCON	02101
PAUSA	00101	SALORA	02201, 04601, 06901	SQUAREVIEW	02501	WHITE WESTINGHOUSE	00401, 04101, 05801, 07901
PENNEY	00301, 00501, 00601, 00901, 02101, 02601, 12201	SAMBERS	06801	SSS	02701	YAMAHA	00301, 01801, 08301, 10001, 11001, 13501, 13601, 13701, 13801, 14001, 14101, 14201
PERDIO	04101	SAMPO	00101, 00301, 01201, 01301, 02001, 02501, 02601, 08301, 13301	STANDARD	00101		
				STARLITE	02701		
				STERN	02201, 03501		
				SUPREME	00001		
				SYLVANIA	00301, 00801, 02501		
				SYMPHONIC	02501, 02701		
				SYNCO	00001, 00901, 01201, 01301, 02601, 05601		
				SYSLINE	00401		
				T + A	05501		
				TACICO	00101, 01201, 02601		
				TAI YI	00101		
				TANDY	01301, 02201		
				TASHIKO	01201, 08301		

YAPSHE	03401	DYNATECH	00002	LENCO	02102	PATHE MARCONI	
YOKO	00401, 03701	ELCATECH	01402	LEYCO	01402		00602
ZENITH	00201, 01201, 02601, 05801	ELECTROHOME		LG	00402, 00702, 00902, 02902	PENNEY	00302, 00402, 00702, 02002, 03702, 04202
<hr/>							
<b>VCR</b>							
ADMIRAL	01102	ELECTROPHONIC	00402	LLOYD'S	00002	PENTAX	00702
ADVENTURA	00002	EMEREX	00102	LOEWE	00402, 01502, 04502	PERDIO	00002
AIKO	02102	EMERSON	00002, 00302, 00402, 00802,	LOGIK	01402, 02002	PHILCO	00302
AIWA	00002, 00402, 02202, 02602, 02702	ESC	02002, 02102,	LUXOR	00802, 01102, 01602	PHILIPS	00302, 01502, 03202, 03902, 04002
AKAI	00602, 02302	FERGUSON	00602, 02402	LXI	00402	PHONOLA	01502
AKIBA	01402	FIDELITY	00002	M ELECTRONIC	00002	PILOT	00402
ALBA	01402, 02102, 02302, 02702	FINLANDIA	01502, 01602	MAGNASONIC	04302	PIONEER	00702, 01302, 01502
AMERICA ACTION	02102	FINLUX	00002, 00702, 01502, 01602	MAGNAVOX	00002, 00302, 00502, 01502	POLK AUDIO	01502
AMERICAN HIGH	00302	FIRSTLINE	00402, 00802, 00902, 01402	MAGNIN	02002	PROFITRONIC	02002
AMSTRAD	00002	FISHER	01002, 01602	MANESTH	00902, 01402	PROLINE	00002
ANAM	00402, 01902, 02002, 02102, 02902	FUJI	00202, 00302	MARANTZ	00302, 01502	PROSCAN	01202, 03802
ANAM NATIONAL	01902, 04502	FUJITSU	00002, 00902	MARTA	00402	PROTEC	01402
ANITECH	01402	FUNAI	00002	MATSUI	02602, 02702	PULSAR	00502
ASA	00402, 01502	GARRARD	00002	MATSUSHITA	00302	PYE	01502
ASHA	02002	GE	00302, 01202, 02002, 03502, 03702, 03802	MEDION	02602	QUASAR	00302, 03702
ASUKA	00402	GEC	01502	MEI	00302	QUELLE	01502
AUDIOVOX	00402, 02102	GENERAL	00902	MEMOREX	00002, 00302, 00402, 00502, 01002, 01102, 01602, 02002, 02202, 02602, 04202	RADIOLA	01502
BAIRD	00002, 00602, 01602	GO VIDEO	02802	MEMPHIS	01402	RADIOHACK	00002
BASIC LINE	01402, 02102	GOLDHAND	01402	METZ	00402, 02502, 04502	RADIX	00402
BEAUMARK	02002	GOLDSTAR	00402, 01802, 02902, 04202	MGA	00802, 02002	RANDEX	00402
BELL & HOWELL	01602	GOODMANS	00002, 00402, 01402, 02102	MGN TECHNOLOGY	02002	RCA	00302, 00702, 01202, 02002, 03502, 03702, 03802
BLAUPUNKT	01902	GRADIENSTE	00002	MINOLTA	00702	REALISTIC	00002, 00302, 00402, 01002, 01102, 01602
BRANDT	02402	GRAETZ	00602, 01602, 02002	MITSUBISHI	00602, 00802, 01302, 01502, 03502	REOC	02602
BRANDT ELECTRONIC	00602	GRANADA	01502, 01602	MOTOROLA	00302, 01102	REPLAYTV	03002, 03102
BROKSONIC	01702, 02602, 04402	GRANDIN	00002, 00402, 01402	MTC	00002, 02002	REX	00602
BUSH	01402, 02102, 02702	GRUNDIG	01402, 01502, 01902, 02502	MULTITECH	00002, 01402	ROADSTAR	00402, 01402, 02002, 02102
CALIX	00402	HANSEATIC	00402	MURPHY	00002	RUNCO	00502
CANON	00302	HARLEY DAVIDSON	00002	MYRYAD	01502	SABA	00602, 02402
CARVER	01502	HARMAN/KARDON	01502	NAD	01602	SALORA	00802
CCE	01402, 02102	HARWOOD	01402	NATIONAL	01902	SAMPO	00402, 01102
CGE	00002	HCM	01402	NEC	00302, 00402, 00602, 01102, 01302, 01602	SAMSUNG	00902, 02002, 02802
CIMLINE	01402	HINARI	01402, 02002, 02702	NECKERMANN	01502	SANKY	00502, 01102
CINERAL	02102	HI-Q	01002	NESCO	01402	SANSUI	00002, 00602, 01302, 04402
CITIZEN	00402, 02102, 04302	HITACHI	00002, 00402, 00602, 00702, 02002	NEWAVE	00402	SANYO	01002, 01602, 02002
COLT	01402	HUGHES NETWORK SYSTEMS	00702	NIKKO	00402	SAVILLE	02702
COMBITECH	02702	HYPSON	01402	NOBLEX	02002	SBR	01502
CRAIG	00402, 01002, 01402, 02002	IMPERIAL	00002	NOKIA	00602, 01602, 02002	SCHAUB LORENZ	00002, 00602, 01602
CROWN	01402, 02102	INTERFUNK	01502	NORDMENDE	00602, 02402	SCHNEIDER	00002, 01402, 01502
CURTIS MATHES	00302, 00602, 01202, 03702	ITT	00602, 01602, 02002	OCEANIC	00002, 00602	SCOTT	00802, 00902, 01702
CYBERNEX	02002	ITV	00402, 02102	OKANO	02302, 02602	SEARS	00002, 00302, 00402, 00702, 01002, 01602, 04202
CYRUS	01502	JENSEN	00602	OLYMPUS	00302, 01902	SEG	02002
DAEWOO	00902, 01602, 02102, 03402, 04302	JVC	00602, 00902, 01302	OPTIMUS	00402, 01102, 01602, 02802	SEI	01502
DANSAI	01402	KAISUI	01402	ORION	01702, 02602, 02702, 04402	SELECO	00602
DE GRAAF	00702	KEC	00402, 02102	OSAKI	00002, 00402, 01402	SEMP	00902
DECCA	00002, 01502	KENWOOD	00602, 01302	OTTO VERSAND	01502	SHARP	01102, 03502
DENON	00702	KLH	01402	PALLADIUM	00402, 00602, 01402	SHINTOM	01402, 01602
DUAL	00602	KODAK	00302, 00402	PANASONIC	00302, 01802, 01902, 03102, 03702, 04502	SIEMENS	00402, 01502, 01602
DUMONT	00002, 01502, 01602	KOLIN	00602, 00802			SILVA	00402
		KORPEL	01402			SINGER	00902, 01402
						SINUDYNE	01502

SONIC BLUE	03002, 03102	BRITISH TELECOM		CYRUS	00704	PANASONIC	00904, 01904, 03004, 06504
SONTEC	00402		00103	DAERYUNG	01304	PANDA	01404
SONY	00002, 00102, 00202, 00302, 03302, 04102	DAERYUNG	00203, 01403, 01903	DAEWOO	06304	PAYSAT	02204
STS	00702	DIRECTOR	01303	D-BOX	02104, 04904	PHILIPS	00204, 00704, 01404, 02004, 02204, 02304, 03104, 04104, 05104, 06904
SUNKAI	02602	FILMNET	01203	DIGENIUS	01104	PIONEER	03104
SUNSTAR	00002	GENERAL INSTRUMENT		DIRECTV	00904, 01204, 01504, 01704, 02204, 02304, 02804, 04104, 04604, 05104, 06904	PROMAX	01404
SUNTRONIC	00002		00103, 00803, 01303, 01703	DISH NETWORK SYSTEM		PROSCAN	01204, 01504
SYLVANIA	00002, 00302, 00802, 01502	GOLDSTAR	00503		02604, 03704	RADIOLA	00704
SYMPHONIC	00002	HAMLIN	00303, 00703	DISHPRO	02604, 03704	RADIOHACK	03504
TANDY	00002, 01602	JERROLD	00103, 00803, 01303, 01703	DISTRATEL	00004	RADIX	01304
TASHIKO	00002, 00402	LG	00503	DMT	04004	RCA	00404, 01204, 01504, 03204
TATUNG	00002, 00602, 00902, 01302, 01502	MEMOREX	00003	DNT	00704, 01304	RFT	00704
TEAC	00002, 00602, 02102, 02202, 03402	MNET	01203	DREAM MULTIMEDIA		SABRE	01404
TECHNICS	00302, 01902	MOTOROLA	00803, 01303, 01703, 02303	ECHOSTAR	00504, 01304, 01604, 02604, 03104, 03604, 03704, 04304	SAGEM	02904, 04804, 05904
TECO	00302, 00402, 00602, 01102	NOOS	01803	ENGEL	03804	SAMSUNG	03804, 04604, 06004, 06204
TEKNIKA	00002, 00302, 00402	PACE	00603, 02203	EXPRESSVU	02604	SAT CONTROL	06404
TELEAVIA	00602	PANASONIC	00003, 00203, 00403	FINLUX	01404	SATSTATION	04204
TELEFUNKEN	00602, 02402	PARAGON	00003	FOXTEL	07004, 07104, 07204, 07304, 07404	SCHWAIGER	04704
TENOSAL	01402	PHILIPS	01003, 01103	FRACARRO	03604	SEEMANN	01304
TENSAI	00002	PIONEER	00503, 01603, 01903	FTE	03404	SIEMENS	00604
THOMAS	00002	PULSAR	00003	FUBA	01304	SKY	03004, 03304, 05204
THOMSON	00602, 01202, 01302, 02402	PVP STEREO VISUAL MATRIX		GALAXIS	03404, 04704	SM ELECTRONIC	
THORN	00602, 01602	QUASAR	00003	GE	01504	SONY	01704, 03004, 06704
TIVO	03202, 03302	RCA	02403, 02503	GENERAL INSTRUMENT		STAR CHOICE	03504
TMK	02002	REGAL	00703, 00903		03504	STRONG	06404
TOSHIBA	00602, 00802, 00902, 01302, 01502, 03602	RUNCO	00003	GOI	02604	TANTEC	01404
TOTEVISION	00402, 02002	SAGEM	01803	GOLD BOX	03104	TECHNISAT	04404, 04504
UHER	02002	SAMSUNG	00003, 00503	GRUNDIG	00604, 03004	TELESTAR	04504
UNITECH	02002	SCIENTIFIC ATLANTA		HIRSCHMANN	00604, 01304	THOMSON	01404, 03104, 03904, 06104
UNIVERSUM	00002, 00402, 01502, 02002		00203, 01403, 01903	HITACHI	01404, 02804	TOPFIELD	05504
VECTOR	00902	SONY	02103	HTS	02604	TOSHIBA	02304, 02704, 06904
VICTOR	00602, 01302	STARCOM	00103	HUGHES NETWORK SYSTEM		TPS	02904, 05904
VIDEO CONCEPTS		SUPERCABLE	00803		02304, 05104, 06904	ULTIMATETV	01204, 01704
VIDEOMAGIC	00402	TELE+1	01203	HUMAX	03404, 05304	UNIDEN	02004, 02204
VIDEOSONIC	02002	TORX	00103	JVC	02604	UNIVERSUM	00604
VILLAIN	00002	TOSHIBA	00003	KATHREIN	00104, 00604, 00704, 01004, 01804, 05604	VENTANA	00704
WARDS	00002, 00302, 00702, 01002, 01102, 01202, 01402, 01502, 02002	TRANS PX	00803	KREISELMEYER		WISI	00604, 01304, 01404
WHITE WESTINGHOUSE		TS	00103	LABGEAR	06604	XSAT	00104
XR-1000	00002, 00302, 01402	UNITED CABLE		LOGIX	06304	ZEHNDER	04004
YAMAHA	00602		00103	LORENZEN	03804	ZENITH	03304
YAMISHI	01402	ZENITH	00003, 01503, 02003	MAGNAVOX	02004, 02204		
YOKAN	01402			MANHATTAN	01404, 03804, 04204	<b>CD PLAYER</b>	
YOKO	02002			MARANTZ	00704	AIWA	00605
ZENITH	00002, 00202, 00502, 04402			MEDIASAT	03104	ARCAM	00605
				MEMOREX	02204	AUDIO RESEARCH	
				METRONIC	00004		00605
				MITSUBISHI	02304	AUDIO TON	00605
				MOTOROLA	03504	AUDIOLAB	00605
				MYRYAD	00704	AUDIOMECA	00605
				NEXT LEVEL	03504	CAIRN	00605
				NOKIA	01404, 02104, 02404, 04904, 05704, 06804	CALIFORNIA AUDIO LABS	
				OCTALTV	03704		00205
				ORBITECH	04504	CARVER	00605, 00805
				PACE	01404, 03004, 05204, 06604	CYRUS	00605
						DENON	01005
						DKK	00005
						DMX ELECTRONICS	00605
						DYNAMIC BASS	00805

## CABLE

ABC	00103, 00203
AMERICAST	02003
BELL SOUTH	02003
BIRMINGHAM CABLE COMMUNICATIONS	00803

## SATELLITE TUNER

@SAT	06404
ABSAT	00104
ALBA	01404
ALPHASTAR	02504
AMSTRAD	03004
ASTON	00304, 05004
ASTRO	00604
ATSAT	06404
AVALON	01304
BLAUPUNKT	00604
BRITISH SKY BROADCASTING	03004, 05204
CANAL DIGITAL	03104
CANAL SATELLITE	03104
CANAL+	03104
CHAPARRAL	00804
CITYCOM	05304
CONNEXIONS	01304
CROSSDIGITAL	04604

## CD PLAYER

AIWA	00605
ARCAM	00605
AUDIO RESEARCH	
	00605
AUDIO TON	00605
AUDIOLAB	00605
AUDIOMECA	00605
CAIRN	00605
CALIFORNIA AUDIO LABS	
	00205
CARVER	00605, 00805
CYRUS	00605
DENON	01005
DKK	00005
DMX ELECTRONICS	00605
DYNAMIC BASS	00805



EMERSON	00905	ALBA	02606	SONY	00506, 00907,	JBL	00210, 02710
FISHER	00805	AMSTRAD	02306		01007, 01107,	JVC	00110, 00710,
GENEXXA	00305, 00905	APEX DIGITAL	02106, 02606,		04006, 05106		03410, 04110
GOODMANS	00905		03006, 03506,	SYLVANIA	02206	KENWOOD	01010, 03010
GRUNDIG	00605		03606, 03706,	TATUNG	03206	KLH	03810, 04010
HARMAN/KARDON			04106	TEAC	01006, 02606	MAGNAVOX	00710, 01210,
	00605, 00705	BLAUPINKT	02606	TECHNICS	00006		01510, 02110
HITACHI	00305	BLUE PARADE	01006	THETA DIGITAL		MARANTZ	00010, 01210,
JVC	00505	BUSH	02306		01006		01510, 02410
KENWOOD	00105, 00405	CENTREX	02106	THOMSON	00306	MCS	00010
KRELL	00605	CLATRONIC	03406	TOSHIBA	00106, 00307,	MICROMEGA	01510
LINN	00605	CYBERHOME	02406		04606, 04806,	MUSICMAGIC	01210
LXI	00905	DAEWOO	03206, 03306		05406	MYRYAD	01510
MAGNAVOX	00605, 00905	DANSAI	03206	URBAN CONCEPTS		NAD	00610
MARANTZ	00205, 00605	DECCA	03206		00106	NORCENT	03710
MATSUI	00605	DENON	00006	VICTOR	01407	ONKYO	00310, 00810,
MCS	00205	DIAMOND	03106	XBOX	00306		02510
MEMOREX	00905	DIGITREX	02106	YAMAHA	00006, 00706,	OPTIMUS	00710, 00910
MERIDIAN	00605	DVD2000	00206		00707, 00806,	PANASONIC	00010, 02310,
MICROMEGA	00605	EMERSON	01206		04306, 04406,		04210, 04710
MIRO	00005	ENTERPRISE	01206		04706	PHILIPS	01210, 01510,
MISSION	00605	FISHER	02006	ZENITH	00106, 01206,		01910, 02010,
MYRYAD	00605	GE	00306, 02606		02906		02110, 02210,
NAD	00005	GO VIDEO	02506	ZEUS	03306		02410
NAIM	00605	GOLDSTAR	02906, 04906			PIONEER	00710, 00910,
NSM	00605	GRADIENTE	01806				03510
OPTIMUS	00005, 00305,	GREENHILL	02606	<b>LD PLAYER</b>		POLK AUDIO	02410
	00405, 00805,	GRUNDIG	00706	CARVER	00108	PROSCAN	01710
	00905	HITACHI	01106, 01507,	DENON	00008	QUASAR	00010
PANASONIC	00205		01906	MARANTZ	00108	RCA	00710, 00910,
PHILIPS	00605	HITEKER	02106	MITSUBISHI	00008		01710, 03810,
PIONEER	00305, 00905	JVC	00906, 01306	NAD	00008		04310
POLK AUDIO	00605	KENWOOD	00006, 00606	NAGSMI	00008	SABA	00710
PROTON	00605	KLH	02606	OPTIMUS	00008	SANSUI	01210
QED	00605	KOSS	01806	PHILIPS	00108	SCHNEIDER	00710
QUAD	00605	LG	02906	PIONEER	00008	SONY	00410, 01110,
QUASAR	00205	LIMIT	03106	SALORA	00108		01310, 04510,
RCA	00305, 00805,	MAGNAVOX	00106, 02206	SONY	00208		04610
	00905	MARANTZ	00706	TELEFUNKEN	00008	STEREOPHONICS	
REALISTIC	00805	MEMOREX	03806	YAMAHA	00308		00910
REVOX	00605	MICO	02706			SUNFIRE	03010
ROTEL	00605	MICROSOFT	00306	<b>MD RECORDER</b>		TEAC	03810
SAE	00605	MINTEK	02606	KENWOOD	00109	TECHNICS	00010, 02810,
SANSUI	00605, 00905	MITSUBISHI	00206	ONKYO	00309		02910, 04210
SANYO	00805	MUSTEK	02806	SHARP	00209	TELEFUNKEN	00710
SCOTT	00905	NESA	02606	SONY	00009	THOMSON	01710
SEARS	00905	ONKYO	00106, 04806	YAMAHA	00409, 00509,	THORENS	01510
SHARP	00405	ORITRON	01806		00609	UHER	00710
SIMAUDIO	00605	PALSONIC	02106			VENTURER	03810
SONIC FRONTIERS		PANASONIC	00006, 00007,	<b>RECEIVER (TUNER)</b>		VICTOR	00110
	00605		00107, 00207,	ADC	00710	WARDS	00410
SONY	00005		01606, 04206,	AIWA	00410, 01210,	YAMAHA	00510, 01410,
SYMPHONIC	00905		05006		03610, 03910,		03110, 04810,
TAG MCLAREN		PHILIPS	00106, 00706,		04410		05510, 05610,
	00605		00807, 01706,	ALCO	03810		05710, 05810,
TANDY	00305		03906, 05206	ANAM	04310	YAMAHA (iPod)	05910, 06010
TECHNICS	00205	PIONEER	00406, 00407,	APEX DIGITAL	01810		05310
THORENS	00605		00507, 00607,	AUDIOLAB	01510	YAMAHA (TUNER ID1)	
THULE	00605		01006, 01506,	AUDIOTRONIC	01510		04910
UNIVERSUM	00605		01606, 05306	AUDIOVOX	03810	YAMAHA (TUNER ID2)	
VICTOR	00505	POLK AUDIO	00706	BOSE	01610		05010
WARDS	00605	PROSCAN	00306	CAMBRIDGE SOUNDWORKS		YAMAHA (XM ID1)	
YAMAHA	01105, 01205	QWESTAR	01806		03310		05110
		RCA	00306, 01006,	CAPETRONIC	00710	YAMAHA (XM ID2)	
			02606, 04806	CARVER	01210, 01510		05210
		ROTEL	01306	CENTREX	01810	YAMAHA (USB)	
<b>CD RECORDER</b>		SAMSUNG	01106, 04506	DENON	03210		05410
KENWOOD	01305	SANYO	02006	FERGUSON	00710		
MARANTZ	01305	SHARP	01207, 01307,	FINE ARTS	01510		
PHILIPS	01305		01406	GRUNDIG	01510		
YAMAHA	01405	SHERWOOD	03206	HARMAN/KARDON			
		SHINSONIC	00506		00210, 02610		
<b>BLU-RAY/DVD PLAYER</b>		SLIM ART	03306	INTEGRA	00310, 02510		
ACOUSTIC SOLUTIONS		SM ELECTRONIC					
	02806		02806				

HARMAN/KARDON	00111
MAGNAVOX	00111
MARANTZ	00111
MYRYAD	00111
OPTIMUS	00011
PHILIPS	00111
PIONEER	00011
POLK AUDIO	00111
RCA	00011
REVOX	00111
SANSUI	00111
SONY	00211
THORENS	00111
WARDS	00011
YAMAHA	00311, 00411



The circled numbers and alphabets correspond to those in the Owner's Manual.

Les nombres et lettres dans un cercle correspondent à ceux du mode d'emploi.

Die umkreisten Zahlen und Buchstaben entsprechen denen in der Bedienungsanleitung.

Inringade nummer och bokstäver motsvarar de som anges i bruksanvisningen.

I manuali e le lettere dell'alfabeto corrispondono a quelli nel Manuale di istruzioni.

Los números y las letras en el interior de círculos se corresponden con aquellos del manual de instrucciones.

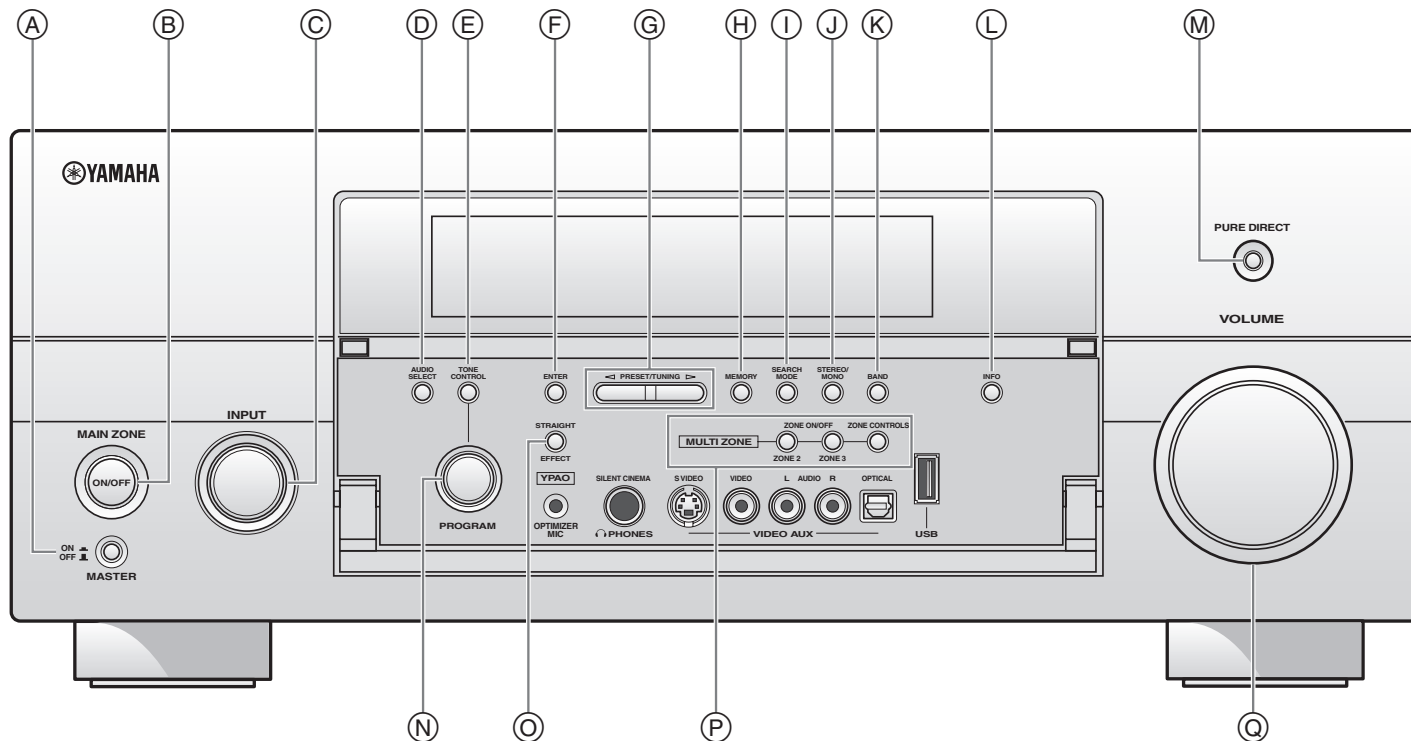
De omcirkelde cijfers en letters corresponderen met die in de Gebruiksaanwijzing.

Цифры и буквы в кружках относятся к цифрам и буквам в Инструкции по эксплуатации.

带圆圈的数字和文字与说明书中的同类数字和文字相对应。

원 번호 및 원 알파벳은 사용 설명서 안의 표기와 일치합니다.

## ■ Front panel/Face avant/Frontblende/Frontpanelen/Pannello anteriore/Panel delantero/Voorpaneel/ Фронтальная панель/ 前部面板 / 전변 패널



■ Remote control/Boîtier de télécommande/Fernbedienung/Fjärrkontrollen/  
Telecomando/Mando a distancia/Afstandsbediening/Пульт ДУ/ 遥控器 / 리모콘

